# Discover China

STUDENT'S BOOK TWO



学生用书2







Controlled, guided and freer activities allow students to practise the target language in a sequence that is most effective for learning.

要 can be a nodel verb, meaning 需要 (need; for exemple 我要某一件大农。0 need to buy a coast! When 事 is used to supers! Mutars actions. It (used) indicates severating that the openior intends to do For example, 我要去看电影。(if m going to go and see a fire.)

for.)
impact equipment at a state of the st

你行电话

地飲又飲其

#### **Grammar reference**

Grammar reference at the back of the book provides detailed explanation of the grammar rules as a handy resource for both teachers and students.

#### Language in use

through an inductive or "discovery" approach, drawing on students' existing knowledge.

#### □・紅灯笼 □ + 春节 □ - 你联

- □・除夕禄对 □・同學 □・玩游戏
- □・包饺子 □ + 吃饭 □ + 拜年

- 1 除夕夜史带夫去了哪里! 做了什么?
- 中国人在郑里斯春联和荘红灯笼
- 生带大他们为什么大年初一去正五家?
- \* 史带大党得中国的春节怎么样?



#### Language in use \_\_\_

我妈妈 正在 做她的 手菜。

# 老师进来 的时候, 同學们 正在 看书。 你打电话 作打电话 直里 正(在) 包数子。 非天下午 生点。

- 1 It is to used to indicate an action in progress at a specific time or during a certain period of time.
  2 It is not used for actions happening in the present.
  3 Either IE or it is not on the action happening of a upocific time.

#### H Write the sentences in Chinese

- They are playing football at the sports ground.
   I was watching TV at 8 o'clock yesterday.

First con

> 我们又玩游戏又唱歌。 他们挂红灯笼。 他们贴春联。 他们又贴春联又挂红灯笼。 中国的泰节提热潮。中国的泰节很好玩 中国的春节又热闹又好玩。 他程度 他很特。

#### 王王的家又大义都亮。 Now check the two correct explanations.

他又赛又印。

I Z I is used to express condition or qualities that occur are after the other
 I Z I is used to connect two or phrases or adjectives as the predicate.

王玉的家很大。 王玉的家很漂亮。

The phrases connected by X ······ X must be of the same structures or part appeals.

- 1 他们唱歌。他们跳舞。 3 中国菜很好吃。中国菜很便宜。 3 坐火车很快。坐火车很方便。



# III Join the two sentences together, using 📆

- 1 安娜看书。安娜打篮球。 2 未民服老师尼面。永民吃饭。 3 马克看电影。马克去同学的生日探对。

practise and consolidate

#### Communication activity

Meaningful and realistic communication in relevant contexts is facilitated through role-plays and speaking tasks.

#### Character writing

Common radicals in characters from the unit are introduced and practised to build students'

#### Review and practice

Builds on language acquisition by recycling previously learnt target language, through which students can also assess their progress.

# Additional speaking practice

Activities are function-oriented, requiring students to use relevant vocabulary and language points in realistic and contextualized ways.



#### **Cultural Corner**

greater understanding and

# Communication activity

LESSON 3

Practice writing common

Being a guest in Chinae
Ween noticed to a Chinaes bouwloof, a
guest can highestly respect as unreptude mass
proposed by the hoot. Altawayth her mass will
be corefully proposed and the quantity room
and the corefully proposed and the quantity room
and the root much. I hope you don't make,
affaild it's not much. I hope you don't make,
burne the meat. On heat will serve here had all
affaild be the fire. They want to make sure the

Section Promoting Colompton

++ gross/paints 袋、英 广 big room/ 床、应

店

Circle the odd word out.

機制鱼 节目 春联 旁边 灯笼 HIR

5 挂 28.45

1 昨天下午四点你在做什么! 1 今天早上八点你在做什么!

1 你上课的时候、你的家人正在做什么?

# Vocabulary extension

More topic-related words are introduced for flexible learning.

#### xiongroo x 存在 things II 极子 2 泵

sleggub plifes xiguit s 苹果 5 葡萄 6 西瓜 Now work in pairs. Ask and answer q what fruit you like,

A: 你喜欢吃水果吗! 你最喜欢什么水果 B: 我喜欢吃水果。我最喜欢……

庚稅 根框 24

#### Vocabulary review

between words to write and words to recognize help students further consolidate their vocabulary. All target words are presented in black

4	tie	60	
00.0	tubryson	ж.	get together
	won	W.	play
主生制	whining/ibs	n.	30300
18	MOSTI	n.	bedroom

# **Contents**

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Unit 1 今天真忙! What a busy day! page 15	Daily routines	of students Understanding feelings and preferences	<ul> <li>Making invitations and explaining reasons</li> <li>Expressing feelings, opinion and possibility</li> <li>Describing daily routines</li> <li>Writing about daily events</li> </ul>
Unit 2 我喜欢下雪天! I love the snow! page 25	Weather, seasons and clothes to wear	<ul> <li>Understanding information about the weather in different places</li> <li>Identifying clothes to wear in different weather</li> <li>Finding out the weather forecast for different places</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about weather and what clothes to wear</li> <li>Comparing the weather in different places</li> <li>Writing a short weather report</li> </ul>
Unit 3 新年好! Happy New Year! page 35	Home visits, Chinese New Year	<ul> <li>Understanding exchanges between hosts and guests</li> <li>Identifying the location of different rooms in a house</li> <li>Understanding a magazine article about festival activities, dishes and customs</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Making exchanges between a host and a guest during a home visit</li> <li>Talking about different rooms in a house</li> <li>Writing about festivals</li> </ul>
Unit 4 我们怎么去呢? How do we get there?	Transport, distance and directions	<ul> <li>Listening for directions to different places</li> <li>Finding information about different modes of transport in a travel guide</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving directions and suggestions</li> <li>Writing about directions to a place</li> </ul>
Review 1 page 55			
Unit 5 请问您预订房间了 吗? Do you have a reservation?	Hotel accommodation, check-in and room facilities	<ul> <li>Understanding hotel check-in procedures</li> <li>Listening for room facilities and location of things</li> <li>Identifying specific information about hotel rooms and facilities on a hotel review website</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about room furniture and location</li> <li>Making and responding to requests</li> <li>Writing comments about a hotel's location, facilities and service</li> </ul>
Unit 6 禁止拍照! No photos! page 69	Museums, history and cultural relics	<ul> <li>Identifying specific information about the rules in a museum</li> <li>Understanding simple descriptions about historical periods and objects in an online post</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking and answering questions about rules and signs</li> <li>Writing about a historical period</li> </ul>

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Sichuan food is	Eating out, food and drink, Chinese dishes	<ul> <li>Identifying features or tastes of different cuisines</li> <li>Understanding exchanges about orders at a restaurant</li> <li>Identifying ingredients and cooking steps of a recipe</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking and answering questions about different dishes</li> <li>Ordering at a restaurant</li> <li>Asking for and giving recommendations</li> <li>Writing a recipe</li> </ul>
吗?	Shopping for souvenirs, sending a package by post	<ul> <li>Understanding exchanges about bargaining</li> <li>Identifying prices and numbers</li> <li>Understanding descriptions of travel experiences and details of events</li> </ul>	<ul><li>Bargaining</li><li>Asking for suggestions</li><li>Writing about a shopping experience</li></ul>
Review 2 page 99			
Unit 9 这里的风景美极 了! The scenery here is amazing! page 103	Sightseeing at places of natural beauty	<ul> <li>Understanding descriptions of a place of natural beauty</li> <li>Identifying features of scenery</li> <li>Identifying information about the location and features of scenic areas from a travel flyer</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about a place of natural beauty through comparison</li> <li>Writing about the scenery of a place</li> </ul>
Unit 10 她长什么样子? What does she look like? page 113	People's appearance, sportswear and sizes	<ul> <li>Understanding descriptions of people's appearance</li> <li>Identifying descriptions of appearance</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking about people's appearance</li> <li>Describing people's appearance</li> <li>Writing about your best friend's appearance</li> </ul>
Unit 11 我觉得不舒服。 I'm not feeling well. page 123	Seeing the doctor, illness, healthy life styles	<ul> <li>Listening for symptoms of illness</li> <li>Understanding instructions for taking medicine</li> <li>Understanding healthy lifestyle suggestions from a health poster</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about illness</li> <li>Asking for and giving reasons</li> <li>Giving advice and describing requirements</li> <li>Writing tips for a healthy life</li> </ul>
Unit 12 你会喜欢她的! You'll really like her! page 133	Friends and personal characteristics	<ul> <li>Understanding information about a person</li> <li>Identifying features of people's personalities and characteristics</li> <li>Finding out about personality traits from a quiz</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about people's appearance and personalities</li> <li>Writing about people's characteristics and hobbies</li> </ul>

Pinyin guide

page 147

Pairwork activities pages 148 and 154

Grammar reference page 160

page 173

Picture captions

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul> <li>The auxiliary word 得</li> <li>Topic-comment sentences</li> <li>了 as a particle and an auxiliary word</li> <li>Expressing succession using —</li> <li>就</li> <li>Words for students' daily routines</li> </ul>	Difference between "z" and "zh"	Planning ahead	Radicals and it
<ul> <li>Expressing similarity using A和B + 差不多/一样</li> <li>Making comparisons using A比/没有B + adjective</li> <li>Expressing future actions with 要/会</li> <li>Weather, seasons and clothes</li> </ul>	Difference between "c" and "ch"	From freezing snow to tropical forest	Radicals 🗌 and 🕻
<ul> <li>Expressing actions in progress using 正在</li> <li>Expressing "both and" with 又</li> <li>又</li> <li>Expressing sequences with 先然后</li> <li>Rooms in a house, Chinese New Year activities</li> </ul>	Difference between "uo" and "e"	Being a guest in China	Radicals ++ and j
<ul> <li>Talking about distance using 离 / 多远</li> <li>Expressing distance using 从A到B</li> <li>Using 以后 / ······的时候</li> <li>Words for transport, distance and directions</li> </ul>	The initials: "zh""ch" "sh"	The art of paper- cutting	Radicals ネ and 纟
<ul> <li>Expressing possession, existence or location with 有</li> <li>Expressing adequacy with 够/不够</li> <li>Complements expressing result</li> <li>Questions about size with (有) 多大 / 长 / 宽</li> <li>Words for hotel check-in, room facilities and everyday items</li> </ul>	Tone sandhi: 3rd + 3rd tones	Family inns in the countryside	Radicals 方 and 八
<ul> <li>Expressing passive voice using 被</li> <li>Expressing a continuing action or state with 着</li> <li>是·····的 constructions</li> <li>Rules and signs, history and cultural relics</li> </ul>	Difference between "ü" and "üe"	Tang poetry	Radicals ≶ and 厂

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul> <li>Noun phrases with 的</li> <li>Giving instructions using imperatives</li> <li>把 sentences</li> <li>Flavours, food and drink, ingredients and cooking instructions</li> </ul>	Difference between "en" and "eng"	Eating out: ordering shared dishes	Radicals 米 and 犭
<ul> <li>Duplication of verbs</li> <li>"The more" 越······越·····</li> <li>Notional passive</li> <li>Souvenirs, prices, package and travel experiences</li> </ul>	The finals: "ian" and "üan"	Tea houses in Chengdu and Longmen Zhen	Radicals 走 and 刂
• Expressing result of an action with 到	I THE PARTY OF THE		
Expressing percentages using 百分之······  ·除了······以外,还·····  ·Words for natural scenery, landscape features and feelings	Difference between "j" and "z"	Famous mountains in China	Radicals 寸 and ß (left)
<ul> <li>Serial verb constructions</li> <li>Affirmative-negative questions</li> <li>Expressing immediate actions with (就)</li> <li>要・・・・・了</li> <li>Appearance, features, sportswear and sizes</li> </ul>	The neutral tone	Who is beautiful?	Radicals 目 and 子
<ul> <li>The auxiliary word 地</li> <li>多 and 少</li> <li>Expressing the duration of action</li> <li>Symptoms of illness, medical advice and instructions, health and activities</li> </ul>	Tone sandhi: 不 and —	Traditional Chinese medicine	Radicals 疒 and 火
Wh-questions     Difference between 有一点 and 一点儿     The auxiliary words 的 / 地 / 得     Characteristics, personalities and hobbies	Difference between "s" and "sh"	The Confucian personality	Radicals † and 马

English translations page 174
Vocabulary list page 183

€

# **Classroom expressions**



# Classroom expressions used by teachers

Qǐng gēn wǒ dú 请跟我读。

Please read after me.

Yuèdú duǎnwén 阅读短文。

Read the passage.

Wánchéng jùzi

完成 句子。 Complete the sentences.

Jīntiān wǒmen shàng dì-yī kè 今天 我们 上 第一课。

Qǐng dǎ kāi shū fān dào dì-shí yè 请打开书翻到第十页。

Wŏmen xiān xuéxí yīxià shēngcí 我们 先 学习一下生词。

Nǎwèi tóngxué zhīdào zhège cí de yìsi 哪位 同学 知道 这个词的意思?

Nǐ kěyǐ dàshēng yīdiǎnr ma 你可以大声一点儿吗?

Xiàmiàn wǒmen zuò duìhuà liànxí 下面 我们做对话练习。

Liǎng rén yī zǔ zuò liànxí 两 人一组做练习。

Bǎ jùzi fānyì chéng Zhōngwén Yīngwén 把句子翻译 成 中文/英文。

Zhǎo chū yǔ túpiàn duìyìng de cíyǔ 找出与图片对应的词语。 Qǐng tīng lùyīn 请 听 录音。

Please listen to the recording.

Qĭng huídá wèntí

请 回答 问题。 Please answer the questions.

Xuǎnzé zhèngquè dá' àn

选择 正确 答案。 Choose the correct answers.

Today we are going to study Lesson 1.

Please open your books and turn to page 10.

Let's study the new words first.

Who knows the meaning of this word?

Could you speak a bit louder?

Next let's do speaking practice.

Work in pairs.

Translate the sentences into Chinese/English.

Match the words with the pictures.

Write a sentence to describe the picture.





# Classroom expressions used by students

Wǒ yǒu yī gè wèntí 我有一个问题。

Zhège zì dú dì jǐ shēng 这个字读第几声?

Zhège zì zěnme xiě 这个字怎么写?

Zhège cí shì shénme yìsi 这个词是什么意思?

Zhè jù huà yòng Yīngyǔ Hànyǔ zĕnme shuō 这句话用英语/汉语怎么说?

Wǒ méiyǒu tīng qīngchu nín néng chóngfù yī biàn ma 我没有听清楚,您能重复一遍吗? I didn't hear clearly. Could you repeat that?

Nín néng shuō màn yīdiǎnr ma 您能说慢一点儿吗?

Zhège cí kěyĭ zhèyàng yòng ma 这个词可以这样 用吗?

Shénme shíhou jiāo zuòyè kǎoshì 什么时候交作业/考试?

Wǒ kẻyǐ qù xǐshǒujiān ma 我可以去洗手间吗? I have a question.

What tone is this character?

How do you write this character?

What does this word mean?

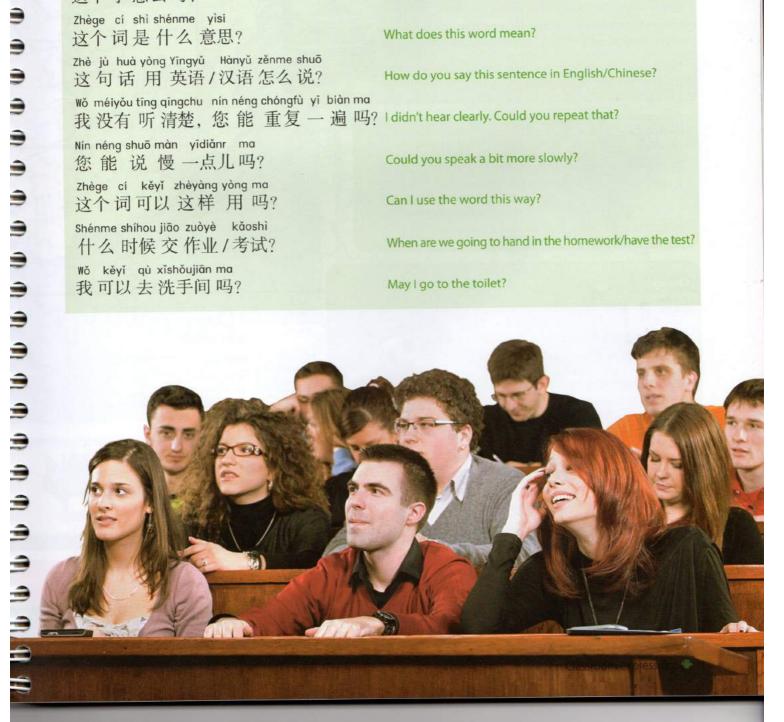
How do you say this sentence in English/Chinese?

Could you speak a bit more slowly?

Can I use the word this way?

When are we going to hand in the homework/have the test?

May I go to the toilet?



# Places in Discover China Xi'an 西安(Xī'ān) capital city of Shaanxi Province, ancient capital of the Tang Dynasty, starting point of the Silk Road 陕西历史博物馆 (Shǎnxī Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn) the Shaanxi History Museum 钟楼 (Zhōnglóu) Bell Tower, used to announce the hours in ancient times 大雁塔 (Dàyàn Tǎ) Big Wild Goose Pagoda, where the monk Xuan Zang kept the Buddhist scrolls he brought back from India during the Tang Dynasty NJIANG UYGUR ZIZHIQU (AUT.REG.) 古城墙 (Gǔchéngqiáng) Xi'an's ancient city walls, the best preserved fortification from the Ming Dynasty, built on the remains of the Tang capital, Chang'an 大清真寺 (Dàqīngzhēn Sì) the Great Mosque of Lintong 临潼 (Lintóng) a county 30 kilometres to the east of Xi'an, where the Terracotta Warriors were discovered 兵马俑 (Bīngmǎyŏng) the Terracotta Warriors, burial goods of the Emperor Qin Shihuang, the first emperor of China Chengdu 成都 (Chéngdū) capital city of Sichuan Province 卧龙自然保护区 (Wòlóng Zìrán Bǎohùqū) Wolong 图 例 LEGEND Nature Reserve, also called "Panda Country" 九寨沟 (Jiǔzhàigōu) Jiuzhaigou Valley, a place of stunning natural beauty, which gets its name S. HOR. SWILL from the nine Tibetan villages in the mountains 比例尺 SCALE 1:12 000 000 Historical timeline 兵马俑 Bīngmǎyŏng qīngtóngmă

Qin

汉 Hàn

Sānguó

China

**Americas** 

Europe/Middle East

<sup>\*</sup>This timeline does not include all dynasties and eras in China's history. The selected eras illustrate some notable contemporaneous periods in China and abroad.



# Meet the characters



Mark Johnson (马克) comes from Brisbane. Mark went on holiday to China after completing high school, and decided to stay and learn Chinese at a university in Beijing. Mark enjoys the outdoors, and he likes surfing and sailing.

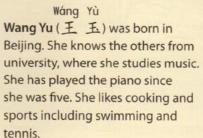


Amàndá
Amanda da Silva (何曼达) is Mark's classmate, from São Paulo. She loves travelling and has a keen interest in history. As well as Chinese language, Amanda is also taking classes in Chinese history at the university.



Shǐdìfū

Steve Brown (史蒂夫), another classmate of Mark and Amanda's, comes from London. He works parttime for a UK-based magazine and is a keen photographer. He enjoys exploring different cultures, and meeting different people.







Jīn Yŏngmín

Kim Yeong-min (全 永民) is also studying Chinese at the university. He comes from Seoul. Like Wang Yu, Yeong-min is a musician, and plays guitar in a local band. He plans to study Chinese medicine after he finishes his courses in Chinese. Yeong-min likes to spend his free time reading and listening to music.



# LESSON 1

# Vocabulary and listening



Number the events of a student's day in the correct order.



shàngkè 上课



qĭchuáng □ 起床



shuìjiào 睡觉



zuò zuòvè 做作业



zuò yùndòng □ 做 运动

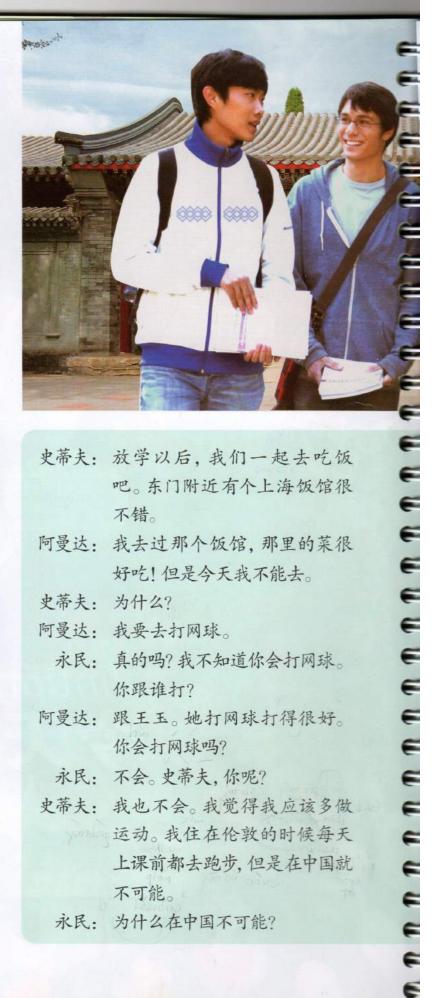


chīfàn □ 吃饭

Now listen and say the phrases.



- Steve invites Amanda and Yeong-min to have a meal together after class. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达放学后要做什么?
  - 2 中国的大学每天早上几点开始上课?
  - 3 永民可以一起去吃饭吗?



史蒂夫: 放学以后, 我们一起去吃饭 吧。东门附近有个上海饭馆很 不错。

阿曼达: 我去过那个饭馆, 那里的菜很 好吃! 但是今天我不能去。

史蒂夫: 为什么?

阿曼达: 我要去打网球。

永民: 真的吗? 我不知道你会打网球。

你跟谁打?

阿曼达: 跟王玉。她打网球打得很好。

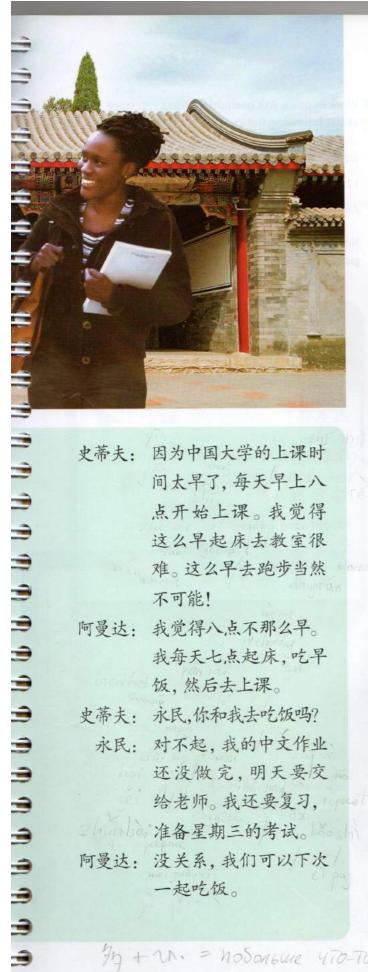
你会打网球吗?

永民: 不会。史蒂夫, 你呢?

史蒂夫: 我也不会。我觉得我应该多做 · 我住在伦敦的时候每天 上课前都去跑步, 但是在中国就

不可能。

永民: 为什么在中国不可能?



史蒂夫: 因为中国大学的上课时 间太早了,每天早上八 点开始上课。我觉得 这么早起床去教室很 难。这么早去跑步当然 不可能!

阿曼达: 我觉得八点不那么早。 我每天七点起床,吃早 饭,然后去上课。

史蒂夫: 永民,你和我去吃饭吗?

永民: 对不起, 我的中文作业 还没做完,明天要交 给老师。我还要复习,

24. 准备星期三的考试。

阿曼达: 没关系, 我们可以下次 一起吃饭。

-

# 生词 New words

fàngxué 放学	school is over	chuáng 床	bed
néng 能	can	jiàoshì 教室	classroom
wèishénme 为什么	why	nán 难	difficult
de 得	(indicates result, degree or condition)	zuòyè 作业	homework
shàngkè 上课	have class	hái 还	still, yet; also
qián 前	before	wán 完	completed
jiù 就	exactly; as soon as	jiāo 交	hand in, submit
kěnéng 可能	possible	fùxí 复习	revise, review
yīnwèi 因为	because	zhǔnbèi 准备	prepare (for)
zǎo 早	early	kǎoshì 考试	exam, test
zhème 这么	so, such	méiguānxi 没关系	it doesn't matter
qǐchuáng 起床	get up	xiàcì 下次	next time

	-		
•			
		э.	
	и		
		e c	
•	п	s	

# Listen again and check the correct answers.

- 1 史蒂夫想放学后去做什么?
  - □a跑步
- □ b吃饭
- 2 阿曼达每天早上几点起床?
  - □ a七点
- □b八点
- 3 永民打算做什么?

  - □ a 做中文作业 □ b 复习准备考试
- Work in pairs. Talk about your plans after class today and invite your partner to join you. Decline your partner's invitation and give reasons why you cannot join them.

# Pronunciation and speaking

D.C.	- 100 Tel 100			1 11 1 1
Differe	nce be	tween	"z" and	a zn

0 1-6	Check the c	correct initials fo	or the characters
	1 做	z	_ zh
	2 早	z	_ zh
	3 中	Z	☐ zh
	4 知	z	_ zh
	5 住	Z	zh
	6作	z	_ zh

Now listen and repeat.



1 早起	zăoqi	zhǎoqǐ
2 多做	☐ duōzuò	duōzhuò
3 住在	zùzhài	zhùzài
4 作业	zuòyè	zhuòyè
5 知道	zīdào	zhīdào
6 曲属	7ōngguó	7hōnagu

Now listen and repeat.

Work in pairs. Ask each other what you usually do at the following times.

6:00 – 8:00 a.m. 8:00 – 12:00 a.m. 12:00 – 3:00 p.m. 3:00 – 7:00 p.m. 7:00 – 12:00 p.m. 0:00 – 6:00 a.m.

Now work with another pair. Tell them about your partner's daily routine.



Being late

What time is it?! (Don't you know the time?!)
Nǐ zěnme cái lái 你怎么才来?
Lùshang dǔchē 路上 堵车。
Why are you so late?
There was a traffic jam on the way.
Wǒ qǐchuáng wǎn le 我起床晚了。I got up late.
Wǒ de biǎo màn le 我的表慢了。My watch is slow.



# LESSON 2

# Reading and writing

- Work in pairs. Check the activities that you do every day.
  - chī zǎofàn 口 a 吃 早饭
- kàn bàozhǐ 口 b 看 报纸
- shàngkè
- xiě rìjì
- □ c 上课
- □ d 写日记
- pāizhào
- dú gùshi
- □ e 拍照
- □f读故事



)

)

•

•

- Read Mark's diary and answer the questions.
  - 1 马克喜欢上中文课吗? 为什么?
  - 2 马克和朋友一起吃饭觉得怎么样?
  - 3 为什么马克觉得很累?

# 生词 New words

máng 忙	busy	túshūguǎn 图书馆	library
chídào 迟到	be late	jiè 借	borrow; lend
cái オ	not until	běn 本	(used for books)
yǐjīng 已经	already	tiānqì 天气	weather
bùhǎoyìsi 不好意思	embarrassed	kāixīn 开心	happy
ràng 让	let, allow	yībiān 一边	while, at the same time
dú 读	read	shuōhuà 说话	speak
gùshi 故事	story	lèi 累	tired
tóngxué 同学	classmate	riji 日记	diary
yòng 用	use	shàngchuáng 上床	get in bed, go to bed
bàozhǐ 报纸	newspaper	shuìjiào 睡觉	sleep
yǒuqù 有趣	interesting		

今天真忙!我七点半起床,没吃早饭就出去了。路上人很多,我这到了,八点五分才到教室。老师已经在上课了,我觉得很不好意思。上课的时候,老师让我们读一些中文故事。有些同学觉得读故事没有用,他们喜欢看中文报纸。但是我觉得这些故事很有趣。有时间我要去图书馆借几本中文故事书。

放学以后, 我去了公园跟我的朋 友李明见面。今天天气很好, 我们在 一月十二日 星期三

公园拍了一些很漂亮的照片。我觉得很开心。

晚上八点我跟王玉和永民一起吃晚饭。我们一边吃饭一边说话,大家都很高兴。晚上十一点我才回到宿舍。我觉得很

累,一写 完日记就 上床睡

觉。



Lesson 2 Unit 1 - 19

Read the diary again and check the true statements.	Langua	ge in use				
□ 1 马克到教室的时候,老师还没有来。						
□ 2 一些同学觉得读故事没有用。	The a	uxiliary wor	d	得		
□ 3 马克在公园拍的照片很漂亮。	rebank teatre		1000		ratificates to	
□ 4晚上八点马克和朋友们一起吃了饭。	1 Look at t	he sentences			every da	
□ 5 马克一回宿舍就上床睡觉了。	Subject	Verb phrase	Verb	得	Complement	
Make a list of the things you did yesterday.	她	打网球	打	得	很好。	
make a list of the tillings you and yesterday.	马克		来	得	很早。	
时间 上午 下午 晚上	他	(吃饭)	吃	得	很多。	
做什么	小王		跑	得	不快。	
	你		做	得	不好。	
和谁一起	Now check the two correct explanations.					
觉得怎么样	□ 1 得 is used between a verb and its					
		omplement to				
Now use the list to write a diary entry. Use Mark's		egree or cond				
diary to help you.					the sentence, g the same as	
		ne verb in the			7	
		can be put b				
		ne verb to indi ondition.	cate re	sult, d	legree or	
	FI Write the	ree sentences	about	VOUE	colf using 但	
		te result or d		7.0	sell, usilig 14	
				W		
<b>李文 多数,《新典》</b>	To	pic-commer	t sent	ences		
The state of the s	Anny at the	sentences.		4	1	
		Semences.		r in		
**************************************	A TOTAL TOTA	opic		Cor	nment	
The same of the sa	这么早走	尼床去教室	很对	Ė.		
A TIGHESHI	这么早去	:跑步	当然	於不可	<b>丁能。</b>	
	我的中文	7作业	明天	:要交	で给老师。	
22 22 22 22	电影院离	将这里	远不	、远?		

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- Topic-comment sentences are used to provide comments or more information about certain things.
- The topic must always be put at the beginning, and consist of a verb phrase or a noun phrase.
- A verb is always necessary in the comment in a topic-comment sentence.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 It takes ten minutes to get there by taxi.
- 2 The supermarket is very close to the school.
- 3 It's not possible to go to bed and sleep before 10 p.m.



#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
王玉	买了那条裙子。		
他	吃了午饭。		
我	迟到了。		
老师	已经在上课了。		

# Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 7 can be used after a verb as an auxiliary word to indicate that an action has taken place.
- ☐ 3 The meaning of the sentence will not be affected no matter where 7 is placed.

# 2 Put 7 in the correct places in the sentences.

- 1 上个星期我爸爸去北京。
- 2 他在伦敦住三年。
- 3 下个月我就十八岁。

Expressing succession 就…… 就……

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject 1		Verb phrase 1	Subject 2	就	Verb phrase 2
我	_	写完 日记		就	上床睡觉。
我	_	吃完饭		就	出来了。
他	-	回来,	我	就	出去。
老师	_	来,	我们	就	开始上课。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 —········ is used to connect two events or actions that happen one after the other.
- 2 ······ 就······ is used to connect two events or actions that happen at the same time.
- □ 3 The subjects of the verb phrases connected by —······· 就······ can be different.

# ② Join the two sentences together, using —…… 就…….

- 1 他回家。他做作业。
- 2 永民到电影院。电影开始了。
- 3 她开始工作。她买了一个新手机。
- Turn to page 160 for grammar reference.

# Now check the two correct explanations.

- Topic-comment sentences are used to provide comments or more information about certain things.
- The topic must always be put at the beginning, and consist of a verb phrase or a noun phrase.
- A verb is always necessary in the comment in a topic-comment sentence.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 It takes ten minutes to get there by taxi.
- 2 The supermarket is very close to the school.
- 3 It's not possible to go to bed and sleep before 10 p.m.



#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
王玉	买了那条裙子。		
他	吃了午饭。		
我	迟到了。		
老师	已经在上课了。		

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 7 can be used after a verb as an auxiliary word to indicate that an action has taken place.
- ☐ 3 The meaning of the sentence will not be affected no matter where is placed.

# Put 7 in the correct places in the sentences.

- 1 上个星期我爸爸去北京。
- 2 他在伦敦住三年。
- 3 下个月我就十八岁。

Expressing succession 就……

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject 1		Verb phrase 1	Subject 2	就	Verb phrase 2
我	_	写完 日记		就	上床睡觉。
我	-	吃完饭		就	出来了。
他		回来,	我	就	出去。
老师	-	来,	我们	就	开始上课。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 is used to connect two events or actions that happen one after the other.
- □ 2 ······· is used to connect two events or actions that happen at the same time.
- □ 3 The subjects of the verb phrases connected by —……就…… can be different.

# ☑ Join the two sentences together, using —······ 就······.

- 1 他回家。他做作业。
- 2 永民到电影院。电影开始了。
- 3 她开始工作。她买了一个新手机。
- Turn to page 160 for grammar reference.

# LESSON 3

# Communication activity

Work in groups of three. Interview each other about your lifestyles, using the questionnaire below.

# 生活方式问卷

- 1 你每天早上几点起床?
  - □ 6-7点 □ 7-9点
- □ 9-11点
- 2 你每星期做几个小时作业?
  - □ 1小时以下□ 1-3小时 □ 3小时以上
- 3 你每星期做几个小时运动?
  - □ 2小时以下□ 2-5小时 □ 5小时以上
- 4 你喜欢什么运动?
- 5 你在哪里复习准备考试?
  - □图书馆
- □ 宿舍/家里
- □公园
- 6 你晚上通常做什么?
- 7 你周末喜欢做什么?

nit 1 Lesson 3

- 2 Report to the class, describing people who have similar lifestyles to yours and people who have different lifestyles.
  - Turn to pages 148 and 154 for more speaking practice.

# **Cultural Corner**

# Planning ahead

Chinese culture has traditionally valued being well-prepared for the future. Chinese people like to make long-term plans for their lives and to be financially secure. Wary of spending too much, they like to save money for housing, children's education, and medical emergencies. Many parents also help their children, especially sons, with mortgages and wedding expenses. They often begin to put aside money when the child is just a baby.

Unlike western people, who usually book flights and hotels several months ahead, Chinese people often only book a month or so ahead at best. Most hotels accept on-the-spot bookings. Trains are still the most popular means of transport in China, and people often book train tickets just a few days before their trip.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
700	fire	点、照
心	heart	您、想

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

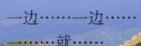


- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 不好意思
- a photo
- 2 开心

- b 7 o'clock
- 3 七点
- e happy
- 4 照片
- d embarrassed
- Trace the characters in the boxes.

# Review and practice

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1起床
- a do homework
- 2 吃饭
- b write a diary
- 3 上课
- c sleep
- 4 做作业
- d have a meal
- 5 写日记
- e get up
- 6 睡觉
- f have class
- Write four sentences about what you did yesterday, using the words from Activity 1.
- Answer the questions using your own information.
  - 1 明年你多大?
  - 2 你的中文作业什么时候要交给老师?
  - 3 你打网球打得怎么样?
  - 4 你打算去中国旅行吗? 为什么?
- Write two sentences to describe each picture, using the words below.







# Vocabulary extension

Match the words with the pictures.

 shāngxīn
 shēngqì
 kuàilè

 1 伤心
 2 生气
 3 快乐

 chǎojià
 xiào
 kū

 4 吵架
 5 笑
 6 哭

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what happened to you yesterday and your feelings.



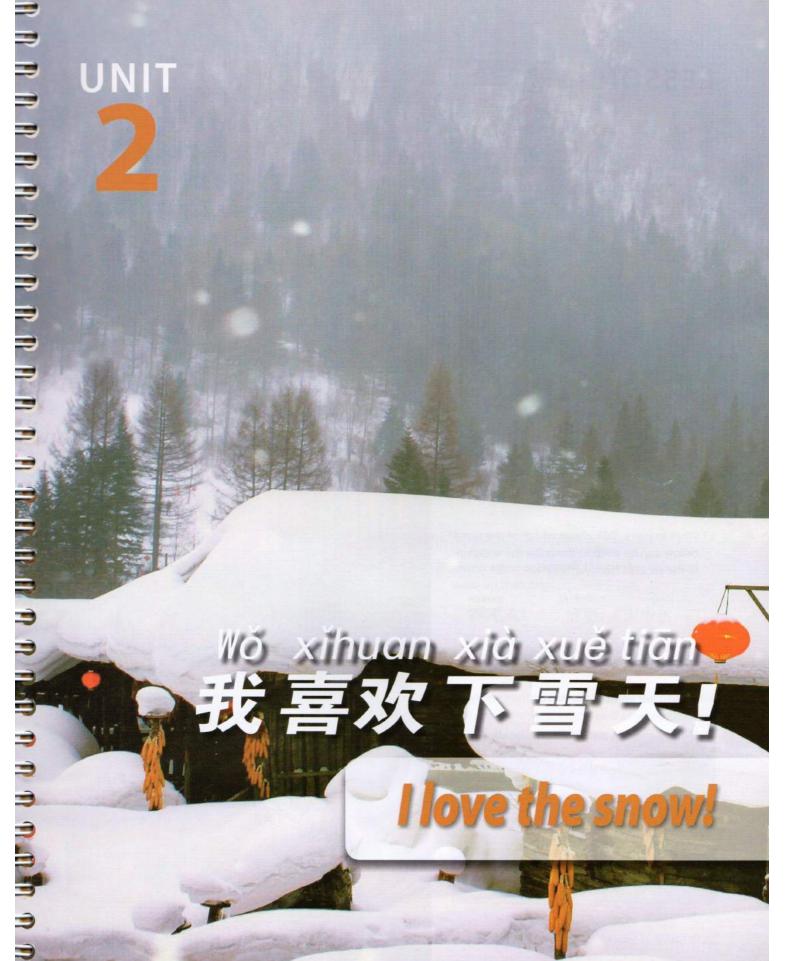
# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

报纸	bàozhĭ	n.	newspaper
THE LEWIS	běn	measure word	(used for books)
不好意思	bùhǎoyìsi		2015 11 11 -
オ	cái	adv.	not until
	chídào	V.	be late
床	chuáng	n./measure word	bed
得	de	auxiliary word	(to indicate result, degree or condition
读	dú	V.	
放学	fàngxué	v.	school is over
复习	fùxí	v.	revise, review
故事	gùshi	n.	story
	hái	adv.	still, yet; also
交	jiāo	V.	
	jiàoshì	n.	classroom
借	jiè	v.	
就	jiù	adv./conj.	exactly; as soon as
	kāixīn	adj.	happy
考试	kǎoshì	n.	exam, test
	kěnéng	adj.	possible
累	lèi	adj.	
	máng	adj.	busy
	méiguānxi		it doesn't matter
难	nán	adj.	
能	néng	modal v.	can
×-	qĭchuáng	V.	get up
前	qián	n.	
	ràng	V.	let, allow

	rìjì	n.	diary
上床	shàngchuáng	V.	
上课	shàngkè	v.	have class
睡觉	shuìjiào	v.	
	shuōhuà	v.	speak
	tiānqì	n.	weather
	tóngxué	n.	classmate
图书馆	túshūguǎn	n.	
完	wán	V.	complete
	wèishénme	adv.	why
下次	xiàcì	n.	next time
一边	yībiān	adv.	
	yĭjīng	adv.	already
因为	yīnwèi	conj.	
用	yòng	n./v.	use
有趣	yǒuqù	adj.	
早	zăo	adj.	early
	zhème	pron.	so, such
	zhŭnbèi	V.	prepare (for)
作业	zuòyè	n.	
吵架	chăojià	V.	argue
哭	kū	V.	cry
快乐	kuàilè	adj.	happy
伤心	shāngxīn	adj.	sad
生气	shēngqì	adj.	angry
笑	xiào	V.	laugh, smile

<sup>\*</sup>The words in colour are not target words for the unit.



# 

# LESSON 1

# Vocabulary and listening



Work in pairs. Talk about what you can see in the picture. Use the words below to help you.

chūntiān xiàtiān giūtiān döngtiän 1 春天 夏天 秋天 冬天 màozi wéilin shŏutào duănkù 帽子 围巾 手套 短裤



Now listen and say the words.



Work in pairs. Talk about which of the words below can be used to describe the weather in the picture from Activity 1.

lěng nuǎnhuo xiàxuě □ 冷 □ 暖和 □ 下雪 rè liángshuǎng xià yǔ

□下雨

□ 热 □ 凉爽

Now listen and say the words.



- Mark, Amanda and Yeong-min talk about what to wear while travelling. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 他们要去什么地方玩?
  - 2 那里的天气怎么样?

阿曼达:马克,你为什么穿这么多衣服? 今天的天气很好,气温二十度。

马克: 这里的天气比布里斯班的冷, 我当然要多穿一些。

永民: 那去西安旅行, 你会穿什么衣服 呢? 听说西安冬天很冷, 风很 大, 还会下雪。

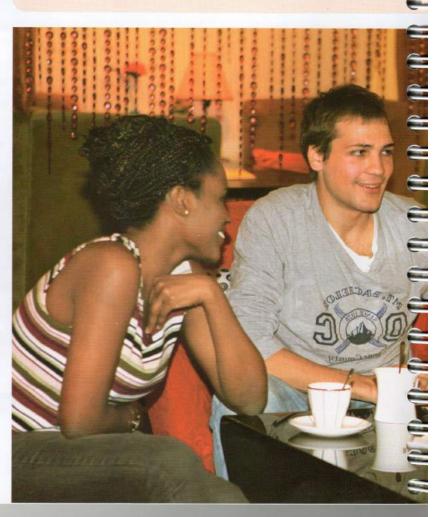
阿曼达: 我喜欢下雪天!

马克:下雪?!我会多穿几件毛衣,戴 围巾和手套,再带件大衣。

永民: 穿这么多衣服, 你还能走路吗?

西安冬天的气温和首尔的差不多,

我不打算带太多衣服。



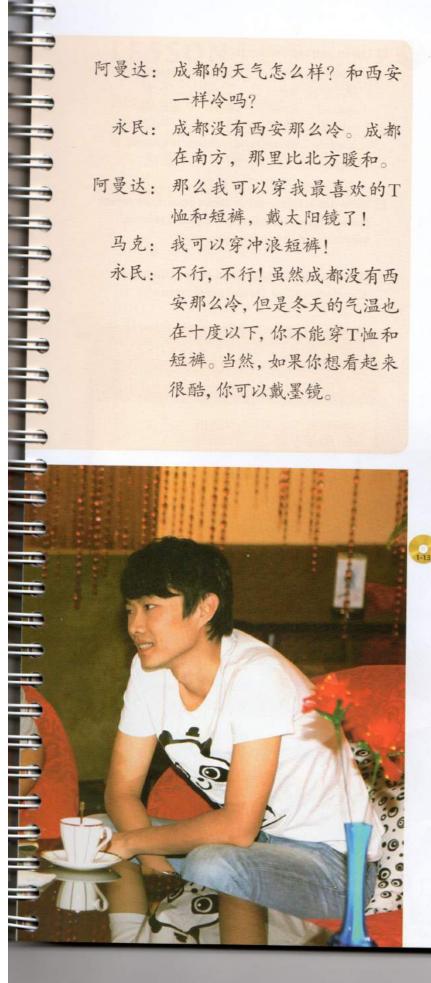
阿曼达: 成都的天气怎么样? 和西安 一样冷吗?

永民: 成都没有西安那么冷。成都 在南方, 那里比北方暖和。

阿曼达: 那么我可以穿我最喜欢的T 恤和短裤, 戴太阳镜了!

马克: 我可以穿冲浪短裤!

永民: 不行, 不行! 虽然成都没有西 安那么冷,但是冬天的气温也 在十度以下, 你不能穿下恤和 短裤。当然,如果你想看起来 很酷,你可以戴思镜。



chuān	THE RESERVE A	shŏutào	
穿	wear (clothes)	手套	gloves
qìwēn	air	zài	
气温	temperature	再	then; again
dù		dài	
度	degree	带	bring, take
bĭ		chàbuduō	
比	compare,		almost
lěng	Contrast	差不多	unito 31
冷	cold	yīyàng	same
tīngshuō		一样	Same
听说	it is said that,	nuănhuo	
10.16.37.70	I hear that	暖和	warm
döngtiān	winter	tàiyáng	
冬天	THE STATE OF THE S	太阳	sun
fēng	wind	duǎnkù	
风	WIIIC	短裤	shorts
dà	hia lavas	xíng	
大	big, large	行	OK, right
xiàxuě	Carrier II	suīrán	
下雪	snow	虽然	although
máoyī	sweater,		
毛衣	jumper	rúguŏ	if
dài	wear (clothing	如果	
戴	accessories like	mòjìng	sunglasses
	hat, scarf, etc.)	墨镜	surigiasses
wéijin	canuf		
围巾	scarf		

- Listen again and check the clothes they can wear on their trip.
  - □ a 毛衣
- □ d 围巾
- □ b手套
- □ e 大衣
- □ c T 恤
- □ f短裤
- Work in groups of three. Look at the photo and talk about the weather and clothes you could wear.



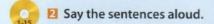
# Pronunciation and speaking

#### Difference between "c" and "ch"

1-14	Check the correct initials for the underlined characters.

1	成都	С	ch
2	<u>冲</u> 浪	С	ch
3	下次	С	ch
4	吃饭	C	ch

#### Now listen and repeat.



Wǒmen kěyǐ xiàcì yīqǐ chī Hánguó cài 1 我们可以下次一起吃韩国菜。

Chéngdū de Chuāncài hěn hǎochī

2 成都 的 川菜 很 好吃。 Wǒ shíyī diǎn cái shàngchuáng shuìjiào

- 3 我 十一 点 才 上床 睡觉。 Dōngtiān qù Sìchuān bù néng chuān duǎnkù
- 4 冬天 去 四川 不 能 穿 短裤。 Wǒmen kěyǐ zuò chuán cānguān jǐngdiǎn
- 5 我们可以坐船参观景点。





1-17

El Listen and say the words.

1	tiānqì	lěng	nuǎnhuo	dōngtiān
	天气	冷	暖和	冬天
2	duǎnkù	máoyī	wéijīn	shǒutào
	短裤	毛衣	围巾	手套
3	qìwēn	chuān	dài	mòjìng
	气温	穿	戴	墨镜

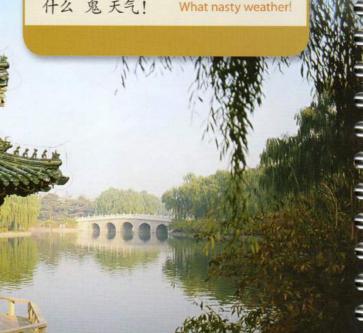
Write down information about your most recent leisure travel, including time, place, season, weather and the clothes you wore.

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's travel experiences.

# CHINESE TO GO

Talking about the weather

Dòng sǐ le 冻死了! It's freezing! Yǔ zhēn dà 雨真大! It's pouring with rain! Bié wàng le dài săn Don't forget to bring 别忘了带伞。 an umbrella. Guāfēna le 刮风了。 It's windy. Shénme guǐ tiānqì 什么 鬼 天气! What nasty weather!



# LESSON 2

# Reading and writing

Match the weather words with their symbols.





•

)

9

) )

•

•

•

Đ

- Read the online weather report for Xi'an and Chengdu, and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 冷空气下个星期只会影响北方地区。
  - □ 2 白天和夜间的气温都会下降10℃。
  - □ 3 西北和西南一些地方降温更多。

# 生词 New words

yùbào	£	chābié	difference
预报	forecast	差别	difference
qĭ	since, starting	dádào	reach, get
起	from	达到	up to
kõnggì	ALI TOUR	yĭshàng	
空气	air	以上	above
jiāng	A POST OF THE PARTY OF THE PART	shàng	- Lorentz and a second
将	(for future	F	above, on
yǐngxiǎng	tense, written)	duōyún	top of
	influence;	AND DEPOSITE OF THE PARTY OF TH	cloudy
影响	affect	多云	
bùfen		zhuăn	change
部分	part	转	change
dìqū		qing	
地区	area	晴	sunny
shòu	suffer, receive,	yīn	
受	be subjected to	阴	overcast
xiàjiàng	De Judjeeteu to	língxià	
下降	decrease	零下	below zero
báitiān		xiǎo	
-	daytime		small
白天	MAN MINE	小	100000011
yèjiān	nighttime	yŭ	rain
夜间	ingittime	雨	Tant



从下个星期起,冷空气将影响我国大部分地区。受冷空气的影 响,北方的气温将下降4-8℃,很多地方白天和夜间的气温差 别将达到10℃, 西北和西南一些地方的温差将在15℃以上。



# 西安

二月七日星期一 日期

二月八日星期二

二月九日星期三

天气

多云转晴

多云转阴

大雪

元温

-4°C/1°C

-5°C/2°C

-6°C/1°C

# 成都

日期

二月七日星期一

二月八日星期二

二月九日星期三

天气

气温

晴

1°C/7°C

多云转阴

0°C/6°C

小雨

-2°C /6°C

- Read again and check the correct words to complete the sentences.
  - 1 西安二月八日的气温是\_\_\_\_。
    - □ a0°C/6°C
- □ b-5°C/2°C
- 2 成都星期一的气温是\_\_\_\_。
  - □ a-4°C/1°C □ b1°C/7°C
- 3 下个星期三西安会 \_\_\_\_。
  - □ a 下大雪
- □ b下小雨
- 4 二月七日成都的天气是 \_\_\_\_。
  - a晴
- □ b 多云转晴



Listen and match the letters of the cities to the correct places on the map.



- Běijīng a 北京 Shànghải
- Xī' ān c西安
- Guǎngzhōu e广州

- b 上海
- Chéngdū d成都
- Xiānggǎng f 香港



Now listen and put the weather symbols from Activity 1 in the correct places on the map.

5 Think of a destination you would like to travel to. Describe what the weather would be like and the clothes and other items you would need to bring.

# Language in use

similarity using

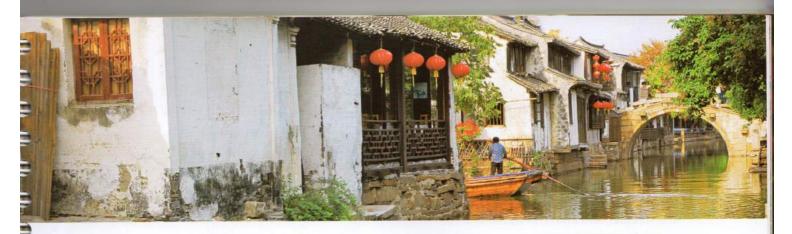
A和B+差 不多/一样

Look at the sentences.

Α	和	В	Adjective	Complement
西安冬 天的气 温	和	首尔的(气温)	差不多。	
他的 工作	和	我的(工作)	差不多。	
我的 看法	和	你的 (看法)	一样。	
王玉	和	阿曼达	一样	高。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 和 is used to connect A and B to express similarity.
- □ 2 差不多 means "the same", while 一样 means "almost the same".
- 3 A complement can be used after 一样, while 差不多 often stands alone.
- Write the sentences in Chinese.
  - 1 The weather next week will be similar to the weather this week.
  - 2 The length of the journey by bus is similar to the length of the journey by train.
  - 3 Is the winter in London as cold as the winter in Beijing?
  - 4 Are you as tall as her?



Making comparisons using

A 比/没有 B + adjective

Look at the sentences.

Α	比/没有	В	Adjective
这里的 天气	比	布里斯班 的(天气)	冷。
布里斯 班的天 气	没有	这里的 (天气)	冷。
南方	比	北方	暖和。
北方	没有	南方	暖和。
你	比	她	高。
她	没有	你	高。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- ☐ 1 比 is used to show that A is higher in degree than B in terms of the adjective
- □ 2 没有 is used to show that A is higher in degree than B.
- When the same head noun exists in both A and B, the second head noun can be omitted.

# Rewrite the sentences using 没有.

- 1 西安的冬天比成都冷。
- 2 北方的温差比南方大。
- 3 今天比昨天暖和。
- 4 这件大衣比那件大衣漂亮。

Expressing future actions with

要/会

#### Look at the sentences.

Adverbial of time	Subject	Modal verb	Verb	Complement
晚上	我	要	复习	星期三的考试。
明天	我	要	交	作业。
	你	会	穿	什么衣服呢?
周末	我	不会	去	公园。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 要 is used to express future action indicating the need or intention of the subject or doer.
- 2 会 is used to express future action showing a high probability.
- ☐ 3 要 and 会 can be used after the verb when expressing future actions.

# Complete the sentences using 要 or 会.

- 1 今年冬天你 去韩国旅行吗?
- 2 这个周末我\_\_\_\_去看爷爷奶奶。
- 3 今天晚上王玉 \_\_\_\_\_上课,所以她 不 和我们一起去看电影。
- Turn to page 161 for grammar reference.

# LESSON 3

# **Communication activity**

Write two true statements about yourself and the weather, and one false statement. For example,

我每年冬天都去韩国玩。 我喜欢滑雪。 我去韩国的时候穿T恤和短裤。

Now work in pairs. Listen to your partner's statements, and guess which statement is false.

Explain the reasons for your guess. Use the following expressions where appropriate.

我觉得……,因为……,……的时候,可能/不可能

Turn to pages 148 and 154 for more speaking practice.

# **Cultural Corner**

# From freezing snow to tropical forest

As one of the largest countries in the world, China covers a vast territory, and different parts of the country have very different weather conditions, from the frozen winters of the north-east, to the tropical climate of Hainan in the south, and the arid deserts to the west.

Such differences in the weather naturally affect the lifestyles of people in the different regions, affecting the food that grows locally and so appears in local cuisine, and shaping regional customs. Even a stranger can be sure of a warm welcome and a hot drink in Harbin, where exposure to the cold can have serious consequences. In tropical parts of Yunnan, the annual water-splashing festival lets you celebrate the new year and keep cool at the same time.



# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
	enclosure	国、园
Y	ice	冲、冰

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.









- 2 Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 围巾

- a next time
- 2 回家
- b very cold
- 3 很冷
- c scarf
- 4 下次
- d go home
- I Trace the characters in the boxes.







# **Review and practice**

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 天气
- a air temperature
- 2 暖和
- b air
- 3 温差
- e weather
- 4 气温
- d temperature difference
- 5 空气
- e warm
- ☑ Write three sentences about the weather in your area. Compare it with another place you know, using "A 比/没有 B + adjective".
- ☑ Write three sentences about a friend, explaining your similarities, using "A 和 B + 差不多/一样".
- Write two sentences to describe each picture.





# Vocabulary extension

Match the words with the pictures.

 yǔsǎn
 yǔxié
 yǔróngfú

 1 雨伞
 2 雨鞋
 3 羽绒服

 fēngyī
 jiákè
 niúzǎikù

 4 风衣
 5 夹克
 6 牛仔裤

Now work in pairs. Discuss in what season or weather you would wear or use these things.



# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

白天	báitiān	n.	daytime
	bĭ	V.	compare, contrast
部分	bùfen	n.	
差别	chābié	n.	difference
差不多	chàbuduō	adj.	
	chuān	v.	wear (clothes)
达到	dádào	V.	
	dà	adj.	big, large
带	dài	V.	bring, take
戴	dài	v.	wear (clothing accessories like hat, scarf, etc.)
地区	dìqū	n.	area
	döngtiān	n.	winter
度	dù	n.	
短裤	duănkù	n.	shorts
多云	duōyún	n.	
	fēng	n.	wind
将	jiāng	adv.	(for future tense, written)
	kōngqì	n.	air
冷	lěng	adj.	cold
零下	língxià	n.	
	máoyī	n.	sweater, jumper
墨镜	mòjìng	n.	
	nuănhuo	adj.	warm
起	qĭ	V.	since, starting from
气温	qìwēn	n.	
3.	qínq	adj.	sunny
如果	rúguŏ	conj.	if
上	shàng	n./v.	above, on top of; begin to do
手套	shŏutào	n.	

受	shòu	v.	suffer, receive, be subjected to
虽然	suīrán	conj.	
	tàiyáng	n.	sun
听说	tīngshuō	v.	
围巾	wéijīn	n.	scarf
下降	xiàjiàng	v.	
小	xiǎo	adj.	
	xiàxuě	v.	snow
行	xíng	v.	OK, right
夜间	yèjiān	n.	1 10 FIED
2	yīyàng	adj.	same
以上	yĭshàng	n.	above
阴	yīn	adj.	
影响	yĭngxiăng	v./n.	influence; affect
	yŭ	n.	rain
预报	yùbào	n./v.	forecast
	zài	adv.	then; again
转	zhuǎn	V.	change
春天	chūntiān	n.	spring
风衣	fēngyī	n.	windcheater
夹克	jiákè	n.	jacket
凉爽	liángshuǎng	adj.	cool
帽子	màozi	n.	hat
牛仔裤	niúzăikù	n.	jeans
秋天	qiūtiān	n.	autumn
热	rè	adj.	hot
夏天	xiàtiān	n.	summer
羽绒服	yŭróngfú	n.	down jacket
雨伞	yŭsăn	n.	umbrella
雨鞋	yŭxié	n.	rain boots



# LESSON 1

# Vocabulary and listening

Match the words with the pictures.



chá 1 茶

tángguŏ 2 糖果

hóngbão 3 红包

shuĭquŏ 4 水果

Now listen and say the words.



2 Work in pairs. Label the rooms of the house with the words.



kètīng 1 客厅

chúfána 2 厨房

wèishēngjiān 卫生间

fàntīna

wòshì

4 饭厅 5 卧室

Now listen and say the words.



- 8 Amanda, Steve and Yeong-min are visiting Wang Yu's home. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达他们为什么去王玉的家?
  - 2 王玉的家怎么样? 有几间卧室?



阿曼达: 王玉,新年好!

王玉: 新年好! 请进,请进。爸爸 妈妈, 我的朋友们来了。我 给你们介绍一下。这是我爸 爸妈妈。这是我的朋友阿曼 达、永民和史蒂夫。

阿曼达等人: 叔叔、阿姨, 新年好! 王玉的爸爸: 新年好! 这是给你们的红 白

阿曼达等人:谢谢叔叔阿姨。

王玉的妈妈:快请坐。请吃糖,还有 水果。你们想喝茶还是果 汁?

阿曼达: 我想喝果汁。

史蒂夫和永民: 我喝茶。

永民: 你家地方很大,也很漂亮。

王玉: 我带你们参观一下我家。这 是客厅,旁边是饭厅。



史蒂夫: 你家有几间卧室?

王玉: 三间。这是我哥 哥的房间,对面 是卫生间。

阿曼达: 这是谁的房间?

王玉: 这是我和姐姐 的房间。我爸爸 妈妈的房间在对 面。

永民: 什么这么香?

王玉: 我妈妈正在做 她的拿手菜,糖 醋鱼。我带你们 去厨房看看,好 吗?

阿曼达和史蒂夫: 太好了!

#### 牛词 New words

jìn 进	come in, enter	pángbiān 旁边	next to, beside
jièshào		fàntīng	
介绍	introduce	饭厅	dining room
shūshu	uncle	jiān	(used for
叔叔	The state of the s	间 wòshì	rooms); room
ōyí 阿姨	aunt	卧室	bedroom
hóngbāo	red packet (for	duìmiàn	
红包	gifts of money)	对面	opposite
táng 糖	sugar, sweets	wèishēngjiān 卫生间	washroom,
shuǐguǒ水果	fruit	xiāng 香	fragrant (smell or taste)
hē 喝	drink	zhèngzài 正在	in the process
chá 茶	tea	náshǒucài 拿手菜	signature dish
guǒzhī 果汁	fruit juice	tángcùyú 糖醋鱼	sweet and sour
kètīng 客厅	living room		



- Listen again and label the rooms of Wang Yu's house with the
  - 1 客厅 2 饭厅 3 卫生间
    - 4 哥哥的卧室
  - 5 爸爸妈妈的卧室 6 她和姐姐的卧室



Write several sentences to describe your home. Start with:

我家有……间卧室,客厅在……

6 Work in pairs. Take turns to read your sentences to your partner, who will draw a floor plan of your house.

Now check and see if your partner's floor plan is correct.

# Pronunciation and speaking

# Difference between "uo" and "e"



# Check the correct finals for the underlined characters.

1 请坐	uo	е
2 喝茶	uo uo	е
3 果汁	uo	□ е
4 客厅	uo uo	е
5 这么	uo	е
6 过年	uo uo	е

#### Now listen and repeat.



# 2 Read the sentences aloud.

Wǒ gēge qù guo Měiguó

- 1 我哥哥去 过 美国。 Hěnduō rén xǐhuan hē guŏzhī
- 2 很多 人 喜欢 喝 果汁。 Nǐ juéde Yīngguó zěnmeyàng
- 3 你 觉得 英国 怎么样 ? Tā zuò zài kètīng li děng gēge
- 4 他坐在客厅里等哥哥。 Wǒmen zuò huǒchē háishì zuò fēijī qù Hánguó
- 5 我们坐火车还是坐飞机去韩国?

#### Now listen and repeat.



#### El Listen and say the words.

1	xīnnián	hóngbāo	qǐngzuò	hēchá
	新年	红包	请坐	喝茶
2	shuǐguǒ	táng	guǒzhī	náshǒucài
	水果	糖	果汁	拿手菜
3	kètīng	fàntīng	wòshì	wèishēngjiān
	客厅	饭厅	卧室	卫生间

# Work in pairs.

**Student A:** You are a Chinese host expecting some visitors during Chinese New Year. **Student B:** You are paying a New Year visit to Student A's home.

Now change roles.

# 27

# CHINESE TO GO

Expressions used at new year celebrations

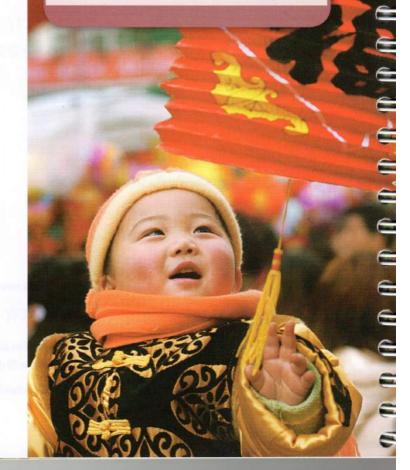
Gōngxǐ fācái 恭喜发财。 I wish you good fortune. Wànshìrúyì May everything go as you hope. Gĕi nǐ yāsuìqián Here's your New Year

给你压岁钱。 Wǒ jìng nǐ yī bēi 我敬你一杯。

I'd like to propose a toast to you.

money.

Gānbēi 干杯! Cheers!



#### Reading and writing

Complete the phrases with the correct verbs.

	guà 挂	tiē 贴	wán 玩	chàng 唱	bài 拜	gěi 给
1		chūnlián 春联		4	yóuxì 游戏	
	2	nián 年		5		ốngbão 红包
3		gē 歌		6	dēngl 灯分	

Read Steve's article about Chinese New Year in the school magazine.

#### 生词 New words

OL = 116		-=-!!=	
Chūnjié	Spring Festival,	cānjiā	take part in,
春节	Chinese New	参加	participate
	Year	yòu	NEW CONTROL OF THE PARTY OF THE
tuányuár		又	again; also
团圆	get together	wán	
72 5050 50		玩	play
jiéri	festival	yóuxì	A STATE OF THE STA
节日	restival		gamo
tiē		游戏	game
12076	paste, put up	dànián chūyī	first day of
则占	A Laborate and A Indicate Income Income	大年初一	lunar New Year
chūnlián		bàinián	
春联	spring couplets		pay a New Year
guà		拜年	visit
	hang up	xiān	
挂		先	first
dēnglong			
灯笼	lantern	bão	ween make
		包	wrap, make
qìngzhù	celebrate	jiǎozi	
庆祝	cerebrate	饺子	dumplings
chúxī			
除夕	New Year's Eve	rènao	bustling and
100 /		热闹	exciting
		100000000000000000000000000000000000000	

# 过年了!

作者: 史蒂夫

今年我在中国过春节了!春节也就是中国 人的新年,是家人团圆的节日。很多人家的门 口都会贴春联,挂红灯笼,庆祝新年的到来。

除夕夜,我参加了学校的除夕派对。很多同学都没有回家,都在北京过春节。我们又玩游戏又唱歌,大家都玩得很开心。

大年初一,很多人很早就起床了,去朋友家 拜年。中午我和永民、阿曼达去王玉家拜年。我 们先一起包饺子,然后吃饭。王玉的妈妈准备了 很多菜,我最喜欢吃的菜是糖醋鱼。

我觉得中国的春节又热闹又好玩。





# Choose the correct answers to the questions. 1 What is the first paragraph mainly about? □ a 红灯笼 □ b 春节 □ c 春联 What is the second paragraph mainly about? □ a 除夕派对 □ b 同学 □ c 玩游戏 3 What is the main subject of the third paragraph? □ a 句饺子 D 吃饭 □ c 拜年 Read again and answer the questions. 1 除夕夜史蒂夫去了哪里? 做了什么? 2 中国人在哪里贴春联和挂红灯笼? 3 史蒂夫他们为什么大年初一去王玉家? 4 他们在王玉家做了什么? 5 史蒂夫最喜欢吃什么菜? 6 史蒂夫觉得中国的春节怎么样? Complete the description of a major festival in your country. zhòngyào 在我的国家,最重要 (important) 的节日是 無 次 克 这

个节日是\_\_\_\_月\_\_\_日。

我们先 \_\_\_\_\_, 然后

这一天, 我们会。

\_\_\_\_。 我 最 喜 欢

我觉得这个节日又

\_\_\_\_又

# Language in use

Expressing actions in progress using

正在

#### Look at the sentences.

Adverbial	Subject	正在	Verb phrase	
	我妈妈	正在	做她的拿 手菜。	
老师进来的时候,	同学们	正在	看书。	
你打电话的时候,	王玉	正(在)	包饺子。	
昨天下午 三点,	他们	(正)在	玩游戏。	

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- I 正在 is used to indicate an action in progress at a specific time or during a certain period of time.
- 2 正在 is only used for actions happening in the present.

Either 正 or 在 can be omitted if the emphasis is not on the action happening at a specific time.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 They are playing football at the sports ground.
- 2 I was watching TV at 8 o'clock yesterday evening.
- 3 She was attending class when you called.
- 4 At 4 o'clock every afternoon, Mark is jogging.

Expressing "both...
and..." with



Look at the sentences.

First condition/quality	Second condition/quality		
我们玩游戏。	我们唱歌。		
我们又玩游戏又唱歌	t <sub>o</sub>		
他们贴春联。	他们挂红灯笼。		
他们又贴春联又挂红	口灯笼。		
中国的春节很热闹。	中国的春节很好玩。		
中国的春节又热闹又	好玩。		
他很高。	他很帅。		
他又高又帅。			
王玉的家很大。	王玉的家很漂亮。		
王玉的家又大又漂亮	5.		

Now check the two correct explanations.

- ☐ 1 又······又····· is used to express conditions or qualities that occur one after the other.
- 2 Z······ is used to connect two verb phrases or adjectives as the predicate.
- ☐ 3 The phrases connected by 又·····又·····
  must be of the same structures or parts of speech.
- ☑ Join the two sentences together, using 
  ☐......
  ☐.......
  - 1 他们唱歌。他们跳舞。
  - 2 中国菜很好吃。中国菜很便宜。
  - 3 坐火车很快。坐火车很方便。

Expressing sequences with 先……然后…

Look at the sentences.

First event/action	Second event/action			
我们先一起包饺子,	(我们)然后吃饭。			
我们先去西安,	然后(我们)去成都。			
他们先喝茶,	然后参观王玉的家。			
王玉先吃晚饭,	然后看电影。			

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 先······然后······ is used to connect two actions or events that happen at the same time.
- 2 先 must be placed between the subject and the verb of the first event, while 然后 is usually put at the beginning of the clause stating the second event.
- □ 3 If the subjects of the verb phrases connected by 先⋯⋯然后⋯⋯ are the same, the second subject is usually omitted.
- 2 Join the two sentences together, using 先……然后……
  - 1 安娜看书。安娜打篮球。
  - 2 永民跟老师见面。永民吃饭。
  - 3 马克看电影。马克去同学的生日派对。
  - Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

Work in groups of four. You're planning a New Year party. The theme is "China". Create a party plan. Think about:

Theme 中国!
Time and place
Decorations
Costumes
Games and activities
Food and drink

- 2 Share your party plan with another group.
- Turn to pages 149 and 155 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

#### Being a guest in China

When invited to a Chinese household, a guest can typically expect a sumptuous meal prepared by the host. Although the meal will be carefully prepared and the quantity more than enough, the host will constantly say "I'm afraid it's not much, I hope you don't mind." During the meal, the host will serve food and drink all the time. They want to make sure the guests always have some food on their plates. Some guests will leave some food uneaten to suggest that they are so full they cannot eat any more.

Good gifts to bring to a Chinese household include fruit, wine, and tea. The choice of gifts one should bring depends on the relationship between the guest and host. If they are friends, fruit makes a good gift. If the host is older than the guest, the guest may bring wine or tea, or a small present which comes from your country as a token to express thanks for being invited.

#### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples		
-11-	grass/plants	菜、英		
广	big room / space	床、应		

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

茶节店庆

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 庆祝

- a Spring Festival
- 2 喝茶
- b get up
- 3 起床
- c celebrate
- 4春节
- d drink tea
- Trace the characters in the boxes.

# 节末末来教

茶末末菜菜菜

庆兴荣庆庆东东东东东东东东东东

#### **Review and practice**

[] Circle the odd word out.

1 饺子 糖醋鱼 拿手菜

2 对面 节日 旁边

3 拜年 春联 灯笼

4 热闹 团圆 参加

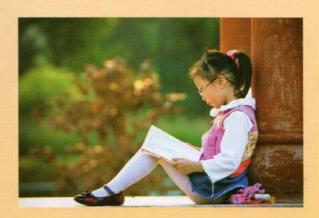
5 挂 贴

游戏

- 2 Answer the questions using 正在.
  - 1 昨天下午四点你在做什么?
  - 2 今天早上八点你在做什么?
  - 3 你上课的时候,你的家人正在做什么?
- Complete the paragraph using appropriate words.

今天是安娜的生日。早上七点,安娜 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 起床了。她 \_\_\_\_\_ 学中文, \_\_\_\_\_ 去打篮球。晚上六点是安娜的生日派对。朋友们 \_\_\_\_\_ 跳舞\_\_\_\_\_ 唱歌。大家 \_\_\_\_\_ 很高兴。

☑ Write two sentences to describe the picture, using 又······又······ and 正在.



Match the words with the different fruits in the picture.

 chéngzi
 lí
 xiāngjiāo

 1 橙子
 2 梨
 3 香蕉

 píngguǒ
 pútao
 xīguā

 4 苹果
 5 葡萄
 6 西瓜

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what fruit you like.

A: 你喜欢吃水果吗? 你最喜欢什么水果?

B: 我喜欢吃水果, 我最喜欢……

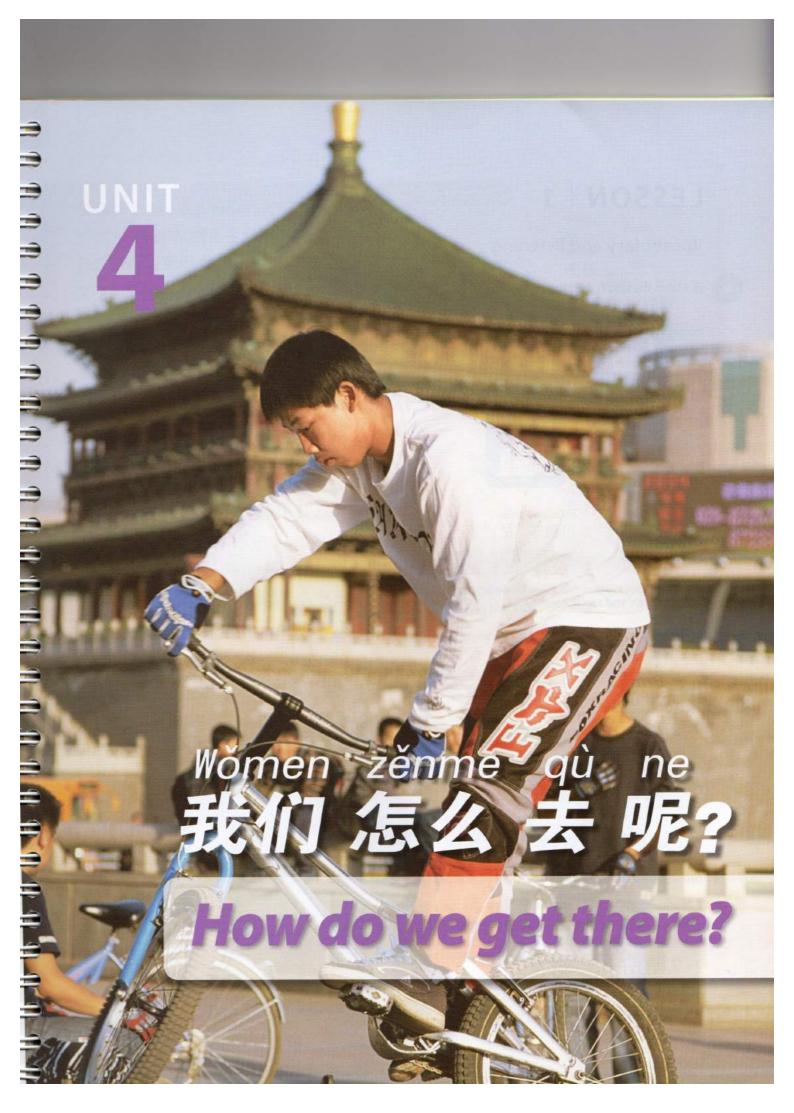


Fill in the blanks.





庆祝	qìngzhù	V.	
	rènao	adj.	bustling and exciting
叔叔	shūshu	n.	
	shuĭguŏ	n.	fruit
糖	táng	n.	
糖醋鱼	tángcùyú	n.	sweet and sour fish
贝占	tiē	V.	
团圆	tuányuán	V.	get together
	wán	V.	play
卫生间	wèishēngjiān	n.	
卧室	wòshì	n.	bedroom
	xiān	adv.	first
香	xiāng	adj.	fragrant (smell or taste)
游戏	yóuxì	n.	
又	yòu	adv.	again; also
	zhèngzài	adv.	in the process of
橙子	chéngzi	n.	orange
梨	lí	n.	pear
苹果	píngguŏ	n.	apple
葡萄	pútao	n.	grape
西瓜	xīguā	n.	watermelon
香蕉	xiāngjiāo	n.	banana



# Vocabulary and listening



Match the words with the signs.



shìzhōngxīn 1 市中心

bīnguǎn 3 宾馆 chūzūchē zhàn

2 出租车 站

gōnggòng qìchē zhàn 公共 汽车 站

Now listen and say the words.



Listen and complete the signs.





- Mark, Amanda and Yeong-min have arrived in Xi'an. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 他们为什么要问路?
  - 2 他们想去哪些地方?
  - 3 西安有什么好玩的地方?

永民: 坐了十几个小时的火车,终于到西安 了。对了,怎么去古城宾馆呢?

马克: 古城宾馆应该在钟楼附近,咱们到 外面问问人吧。……请问,从这里 到钟楼怎么走?有多远?

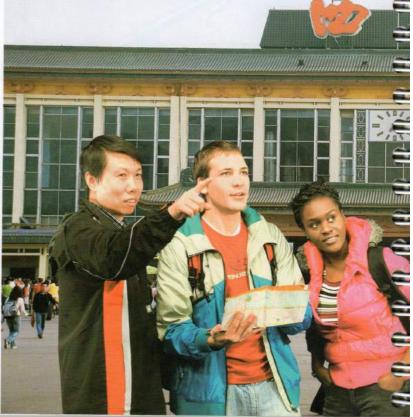
路人: 钟楼在市中心, 离这里很近, 差不多五公里, 坐出租车十分钟就到。

马克: 请问出租车站在哪里?

路人: 往前走五十米, 再向右拐, 你就可以看到出租车站。

阿曼达:谢谢您。那您知道从市中心怎么去 古城墙和兵马俑吗?

路人: 古城墙在市中心南边,走路就可以到。兵马俑很远,在西安市东边三十公里,你们可以坐出租车或者公共汽车去。



永民: 西安还有什么好玩的

地方吗?

路人: 你们应该去大雁塔,它 在西安市的南边。

马克: 大雁塔看起来像大雁 吗? 哈哈 .....

永民: 马克, 别开玩笑了。

阿曼达: 大清真寺呢?

路人: 那里也应该去。大清真

寺在钟楼附近,很容易

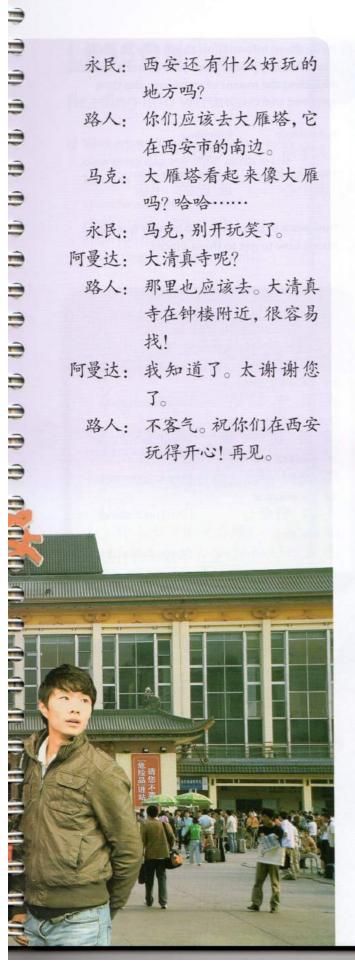
找!

阿曼达: 我知道了。太谢谢您

了。

路人: 不客气。祝你们在西安

玩得开心! 再见。



#### 生词 New words

zhōngyú 终于	at last, finally	qiáng 墙	wall
gů 古	old, ancient	zǒulù 走路	walk
bīnguǎn 宾馆	hotel	xiàng 像	look like
zánmen 咱们	we, us	kāi wánxiào 开 玩笑	make a joke
wàimiàn 外面	outside	róngyì 容易	easy
gōnglǐ 公里	kilometre	zhǎo 找	look for, find
xiàng 向	to	bù kèqi 不客气	You're welcome.
yòu 右	right side, right	zhù 祝	wish
guǎi 拐	turn	zàijiàn 再见	goodbye
nín 您	you (respectful form)		



#### Listen again and mark the correct locations of the following places on the map.

Zhōnglóu 1 钟楼

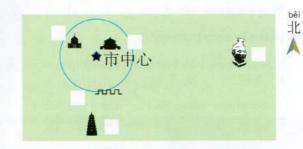
Gŭchéngqiáng 古城墙

Dàyàntă 3大雁塔

Qīngzhēnsì

Bĭngmăyŏng

5 兵马俑 4 清真寺



#### Mork in pairs. Ask and answer questions about

- · how far away the following places are;
- how to get to these places from where you are now.

Use the conversation in Activity 3 to help you.

洗手间

地铁站

图书馆

公共汽车站

# Pronunciation and speaking

#### The initials: "zh" "ch" "sh"

0	Check the correct init
1-32	

#### tials for the underlined characters.

1	城市		zh	ch		sh
2	中心		zh	ch		sh
3	这里		zh	ch		sh
4	差不多		zh	ch		sh
5	出租车		zh	ch		sh
6	十分钟	П	zh	ch	П	sh

#### Now listen and repeat.



#### Say the sentences aloud.

Wǒ zài zhège shāngdiàn mǎi le yī gè shǒujī 1 我在这个 商店 买了一个手机。

Shūdiàn de shòuhuòyuán wèn wǒ de shēngrì

2 书店的售货员问我的生日。

Zhège shǔjià wǒ qù Zhōngguó zuò zhìyuànzhě 3 这个暑假我去 中国 做 志愿者。

Nǐ rènshi zài chāoshì shàngbān de rén ma

4 你认识在超市 上班 的人吗?

#### Now listen and repeat.



#### El Listen and say the words.

fēijīchang huochēzhan shìzhōngxīn 1 飞机场 火车站 市中心 zěnme zŏu wăngqián zŏu xiàng yòu quải 2 怎么 走 往前 走 向右拐 duō yuǎn fùjìn róngyì 3 多远 附近 容易 chàbuduō wůshí mǐ zuŏyòu 4 五十米 左右 差不多

Write down information about how to get to the following places from your current location, including the means of transport, the time required and the cost.

huǒchēzhàn	fēijīchǎng			
火车站	飞机场			
shìzhōngxīn	zuì jìn de shūdiàn			
市中心	最近的 书店			

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about how to get to these places.

#### CHINESE TO GO

#### Asking for repetition and clarification

Wǒ méi tīng gīngchu 我没听清楚。 I didn't catch that. Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn 请再说一遍。 Please say that again. Nǐ míngbai ma 你 明白 吗? Do you understand? Wǒ bù míngbai 我不明白。 I don't understand. Nín shì shuō 您是说……? Do you mean...?



## Reading and writing

- Work in pairs. Talk about your journey to class every day, using the words in the box. Say
  - · how far away your home is
  - · how long the journey takes
  - · how you travel
  - · what time you leave and arrive.

kāi chē jìnrù
开车drive a car 进入 enter
líkāi dàodá
离开 leave 到达 arrive
shàng xiàchē
上 /下车 get on/off (a vehicle)



•

-

=

•

•

- Read the travel guide about Xi'an and answer the questions.
  - 1 从市中心去兵马俑可以坐 什么车?
  - 2 坐什么车又快又方便?
  - 3 坐什么车最不方便? 为什么?



# 西安 旅游指南

# 怎么去兵马俑博物馆?

从市中心去兵马俑博物馆可以坐出租车, 也可以坐公共汽车或者火车。



#### 出租车/开车

坐出租车或者开车又快又方便,出租车车费大约一百八十元。从市中心到高速公路只要十五分钟左右。在高速公路上开三十公里以后,进入临潼。离开高速公路以后,再开大约十分钟,就到兵马俑博物馆。



#### 公共汽车

坐公共汽车比较慢,要一小时十五分钟 左右。西安火车站有去兵马俑的公共汽车, 车票每张七元。



#### 火车

坐火车没有坐出租车或者公共汽车那么方便。从西安坐火车到临潼火车站以后,还要坐出租车才能到兵马俑博物馆。车费不太贵——火车票六元,出租车费三十元左右。高速公路堵车的时候,坐火车比较快。但是,火车有时候会晚点。

#### 生词 New words

bówuguan		agosiji	gōnglù motorway,	piào		
博物馆	museum	高速	公路 freeway	票	ticket	
开 kuài	drive (a car); open; prescribe	jìnrù		zhāng	(for thin,	
		进入	enter	张	flat things);	
快 chēfèi	fast	líkāi 南 正	leave	dŭchē	open	
	(bus/train/taxi) fare	离开 bǐjiào		堵车	traffic jam	
车费 dàyuē 大约	approximately	比较màn	comparatively, in comparison	yǒushí hou 有时(候)	sometimes	
yuán 元	yuan, Chinese currency unit	慢	slow	wǎndiǎn 晚点	be delayed	

时间 价钱 出租车 公共汽车 火车

Now work in pairs. Say which way you'd prefer to travel, and why.

A friend is travelling by train to visit you. Write him/her an email explaining how to get to your home from the railway station.

Unit 4 Lesson 2

#### Language in use

Talking about distance using

离 / 多远

Look at the sentences.

Tells .	Topic		
А	离	В	Comment
伦敦	离	香港	多远?
伦敦	离	香港	有 9000 公里。
钟楼	离	这里	多远?
钟楼	离	这里	很近。
火车站	(离)	(这里)	(有)多远?
			不远。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 离 is used to introduce the starting point of a distance between two places.
- 2 多远 is used to ask about how far away one place is from another.
- □ 3 离 and 这里 can be left out if the starting point is obviously known in the context.
- Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences.
  - 1 北京离成都不远。
  - 2 北京离纽约有6000多公里。
  - 3 图书馆离这里很近。

Expressing distance using

从A到B

II Look at the sentences.

W.	To	pic		Comment		
从	A	到	В	Verb phrase	Duration	
从	这里	到	钟楼,	坐出租 车	十分钟 就到。	
从	市中心	到	兵马俑,	坐公共 汽车	要一个小时。	
从	市中心	到	高速公路,	开车	要十五 分钟左 右。	
从	宿舍	到	超市,	走路	大约五 分钟。	

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 从 is used before A to indicate the starting point, while 到 is used before B, indicating the end point.
- The verb phrase for means of transport can be used after the duration.
- The verb phrase for means of transport must be used before the duration.

#### Complete the sentences.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn

- 1 从我家到 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 走路 \_\_\_\_。
- 2 从市中心到 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 开车 \_\_\_\_\_。
- 3 从伦敦到 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 坐飞机 \_\_\_\_\_。

Using 以后 / …… 的时候

#### Look at the sentences.

Adverbial clause			
Action 1	以后	Main sentence/Action 2	
离开高速公路	以后,	再开大约十分钟。	
After leaving the n minutes.	notorway,	drive on for about ten	
回北京	以后,	我们可以看京剧。	
After going back to	Beijing.	we can watch Beijing opera.	

Adverbial clause				
Action 1	的时候	Main sentence/Action 2		
我到教室	教室 的时候,老师已经在上课了。			
When I got to the giving the class	he classroor	n, the teacher was already		
去西安旅行的时候, 你会穿什么衣服?				
What will you v	vear when y	ou go travelling to Xi'an?		

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 以后 and ······的时候 are used at the beginning of an adverbial clause, meaning "after" and "when" respectively.
- □ 2 The positions of 以后 and ······的时候 in Chinese sentences are different from where "after" and "when" are placed in English sentences.
- □ 3 以后 and ······的时候 can not be used to express the same concept of time.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 | called my mother after | arrived in Beijing.
- 2 She was sleeping when I left home.
- 3 I do my homework after I get back home every day.
  - Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

- Your class are going on a weekend trip together. As a class, discuss and agree on a destination.
- Work in groups of four. Plan the trip, including means of transport, the best route to get there, and things to see and do on the trip.
- Present your plan to the class.
- 4 Work with the whole class. Decide on the best plan.
  - Turn to pages 149 and 155 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

# The art of paper-cutting

Paper-cuttings, a common souvenir often found in markets and temple fairs around China, are a traditional form of folk art. Paper was a precious commodity in very ancient times, and before the 6th century (the date of the oldest surviving paper-cut) none but the very wealthiest could have afforded to use it for artwork. But as paper became more widely available, paper-cutting became a popular artform, allowing everyone to express their creativity with just a pair of scissors and a few sheets of paper, from highborn courtiers to lowly artisans.

In rural China, paper-cutting is a traditional activity for women, and skill at paper-cutting used to be considered a great advantage in a prospective bride.

Paper-cuttings were traditionally used for



# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
礻	spirit	礼、福
4	silk	丝、绿

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

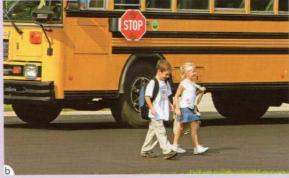
# 祝给级视

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1终于
- a TV
- 2 祝
- b at last
- 3 电视
- e approximately
- 4 大约
- d wish
- El Trace the characters in the boxes.
- 视光光彩彩彩彩
- 祝果然解释
- 约果果果果务务
- 终果然外外外外

#### Review and practice

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 堵车
- a arrive
- 2 晚点
- b traffic jam
- 3 进入
- c leave
- 4 到达
- d enter, come into
- 5 离开
- e delayed
- Write four sentences about your daily activities using 以后 and ······的时候.
- Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about how far away the following places are from your home, and how to get to them.
  - 1 学校
- 4 北京
- 2 地铁站
- 5 香港
- 3 飞机场
- 6 伦敦
- Write two sentences to describe each picture, including the means of transport.





#### Vocabulary extension

Look at Mark's train ticket and complete the text message.

cì
次 service number of a train
chē
车 carriage of a train
yìngzuò
硬座 hard seat
dàngrì
当日 on the date stated
yǒuxiào
有效 valid

 E025782
 京BD傳

 北京西<br/>Beijingxi
 41次<br/>区<br/>工<br/>(Xi'an)
 西安<br/>Xi'an

 2011年2月15日18:27开<br/>¥ 230元
 11车118号<br/>便座

 限乘当日当次车在3日内到有效



<u>"</u>

#### Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

比较	bĭjiào	adv.	comparatively, in comparison
宾馆	bīnguǎn	n.	
博物馆	bówùguăn	n.	museum
	bù kèqi		You're welcome.
车费	chēfèi	n.	(bus/train/taxi) fare
大约	dàyuē	adv.	
堵车	dǔchē	v.	
高速公路	gāosù gōnglù	n.	motorway, freeway
	gōnglĭ	n.	kilometre
古	gŭ	adj.	
拐	guăi	V.	turn
进入	jìnrù	v.	enter
	kāi	v.	drive (a car); open; prescribe
开玩笑	kāi wánxiào		
快	kuài	adj.	fast
离开	líkāi	v.	
	màn	adj.	slow
	nín	pron.	you (respectful form)
	piào	n.	ticket
墙	qiáng	n.	wall
容易	róngyì	adj.	

	wàimiàn	n.	outside
晚点	wăndiăn	adj.	
向	xiàng	prep.	to
像	xiàng	v.	
有时(候)	yŏushí (hou)	adv.	sometimes
右	yòu	n.	right side, right
	yuán	n.	yuan, Chinese currency unit
再见	zàijiàn	V.	
咱们	zánmen	pron.	we, us
	zhāng	measure word/v.	(for thin, flat things); open
	zhǎo	V.	look for, find
终于	zhōngyú	adv.	
祝	zhù	v.	wish
	zŏulù	V.	walk
车	chē	n.	carriage of a trair
次	cì	n.	service number of a train
当日	dàngrì	n.	on the date stated
到达	dàodá	V.	arrive
上/下车	shàng xià chē	V.	get on/off (a vehicle)
硬座	yìngzuò	n.	hard seat
有效	yŏuxiào	v.	valid

#### **Review 1**

#### Vocabulary

- Match the verbs with the nouns to make phrases.
  - 1 交
- a 故事
- 2 准备
- b 报纸
- 3 读
- c毛衣
- 4 看
- d 考试
- 5 戴
- e 作业
- 6 穿

- f 手套
- Make words using the characters in the box.

# 和降云报别温气

- 1气\_\_\_\_ 5空\_\_\_\_

- 2 差 \_\_\_\_ 6 下 \_\_\_\_
- 3 暖
- 7多
- 4 影 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 预 \_\_\_\_\_

Now make sentences using the words given.

- 9 空气/影响
- 10 预报/下降

El Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

#### 喝 庆祝 介绍 贴 参加 拜年

- 1 你能给我们 一下吗?
- 2 过年的时候很多人家的门口都会 \_\_\_\_\_春联。
- 3 你想 什么? 果汁还是茶?
- 4 大年初一我去朋友家 \_\_\_\_。
- 5 很多人\_\_\_\_\_了学校的除夕派对。
- 6 你想怎样 生日?
- Put the words in the correct categories.
  - a 走路
- e 下雪 i 气温
- b拜年
- f 开车 j 红灯笼

- c 堵车 g 晴 k 晚点
- d 红包 h 春联 l 阴

天气	春节	交通

Now write five sentences about what Chinese people do at the Spring Festival.

#### Grammar

- Match the parts to complete the sentences.
  - 1 周末前做完作业
  - 2 公园离我家不远,
  - 3 我一回家,
  - 4 我们先吃饭,
  - 5 你去看电影的时候,
  - 6 从这里到市中心,
  - a 王玉正在学校上课。
  - b坐公共汽车要半个小时。
  - c当然不可能。
  - d 走路只要10分钟。
  - e就给她打电话。
  - f然后去看电影。
- ☑ Complete the sentences using 就 and 才.
  - 1 电影开始以后马克\_\_\_来。
  - 2 早上六点半王玉\_\_\_起床了。
  - 3 他今天很累,晚上八点\_\_\_上床睡觉了。
  - 4 做完作业以后你 \_\_\_\_ 可以出去。

- El Complete the sentences using 要 and 会.
  - 1 今天晚上我 \_\_\_\_ 复习准备考试。
  - 2 下个月气温 \_\_\_ 下降很多。
  - 3 我爸爸明天 去伦敦。
- Make sentences using 又······又····· and the words given.
  - 1 便宜/漂亮
  - 2 读故事/看报纸
  - 3 唱歌/玩游戏
- **S** Write a sentence to describe each picture, using 得 to indicate result or degree.





Write three sentences about what you did yesterday, using 得 to indicate result or degree.

- **W**rite three sentences about things you often do at the same time, using 一边······-边······.
- S Complete the sentences using 以后 and …… 的时候.
  - 1起床\_\_\_\_\_,我洗脸刷牙。
  - 2 马克来我家\_\_\_\_\_, 我正在贴春联。
  - 3 放学 \_\_\_\_\_, 他们去打篮球。
  - 4暑假\_\_\_\_\_,我们要去上海旅行。
- Write four sentences to describe your city or town, using "A 比/没有 B+adjective" and "A 和 B+差不多/一样".

# Integrated skills

- Listen and choose the correct answers to the questions.
  - 1 他住在伦敦的时候每天上课前都做什么?
    - a打网球

- b跑步
- 2 他在这里每天上课前都去跑步吗?
  - a夫
- b不去
- 3 哪里的天气比较冷?
  - a成都
- b首尔
- 4 去成都需要带很多衣服吗?
  - a需要
- b不需要
- 5 人们怎样庆祝新年?
  - a贴春联
- b挂红灯笼
- 6 春联贴在哪里?
  - a | ] |
- b卧室

- 7 怎么去邮局?
  - a 往前走三十米, 再向左拐。
  - b往前走三十米,再向右拐。



- Listen and choose the most appropriate responses.
  - 1 a 对不起, 我要复习准备明天的考试。
    - b 我们可以下次一起吃饭。
  - 2 a 下雪?!没问题,我可以多穿 一些衣服。
    - b 太好了! 那我可以穿我最喜欢的T 恤和短裤了!
  - 3 a 新年好! 谢谢阿姨。
    - b 太好了。
  - 4 a 我给你们介绍一下。
    - b 我带你们参观一下我家。
  - 5 a 火车站离市中心不远,坐出租车 十分钟就到。
    - b 火车站离这里很近,走路就可以到。
  - 6 a 兵马俑很远, 你们可以坐旅游车去。
    - b 兵马俑在西安市东边三十公里。

Complete the passage using the words in the box.

 方便
 冷
 暖和
 穿

 天气
 景点
 历史
 戴

西安在中国的西北部。这里四个季节的 \_\_\_\_\_ 都不一样: 春天 \_\_\_\_\_, 夏天很热,秋天凉爽,冬天很 \_\_\_\_\_。夏天可以 \_\_\_\_ 裙子、T恤和短裤; 冬天要 \_\_\_\_\_ 毛衣和大衣, \_\_\_\_ 围巾和手套。

西安有几千年的 \_\_\_\_\_\_, 有很多有名的 \_\_\_\_\_\_。最有名的是兵马俑博物馆。西安的交通很 \_\_\_\_\_\_, 你可以坐火车或者飞机去西安。

Now read again and check the true statements.

- □ 1 西安四个季节的天气都差不多。
- □ 2冬天去西安不能穿短裤。
- □ 3 西安的景点不太有名。
- □ 4 你只能坐飞机去西安。
- Write about your travel plans for the winter holidays, including time, place, weather, what to wear, transport and highlights of the place.

  Make comparisons between the places you have considered and state reasons for your choice. Use 先……然后……, A 比 B+adjective, 又……又…….

#### **Enjoy Chinese**



The character 打 is formed by the radical ‡ and the signific 丁. In ancient Chinese, the radical ‡ was 手 and the signific 丁 was 个. In modern Chinese, 打 is a common verb and can form a wide range of verb phrases indicating different activities. Here are some examples.

打网球 play tennis

打电话 make a phone call

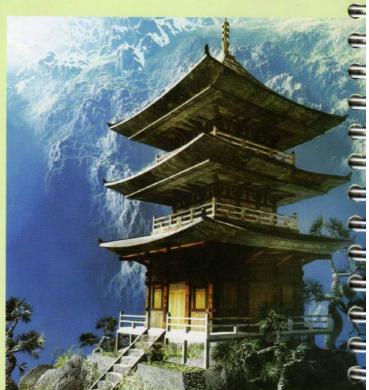
打车 take a taxi

Now match the phrases with the meanings.

1 打井 a do a temporary job

2 打工 b hit someone

3 打人 c dig a well



Aingwen nin yùding 请问您预订 fángjiān le ma 房间了吗?

## Vocabulary and listening



Check the furniture that you can find in the picture.



- yīguì
- □ 衣柜 chuáng
- 床 zhuōzi
- □ 桌子
- shāfā
- □ 沙发 shūguì
- □ 书柜
- yĭzi 椅子

Now listen and say the words.



Match the phrases with the meanings.

yùdìng fángjiān

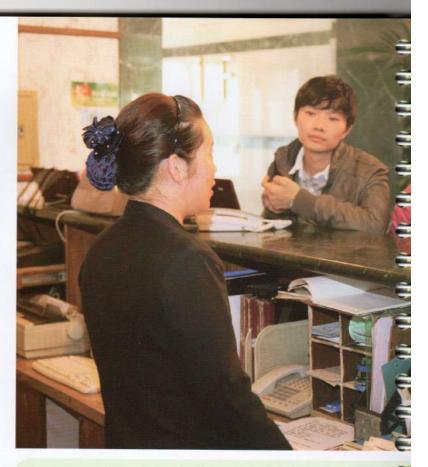
- 1 预订 房间 bànlĭ rùzhù
- a fill in a registration
- 2 办理入住
- b take a room card
- tián dēngjì kǎ
- 3 填登记卡
- c make a reservation
- ná fángkă
- 4 拿房卡

d check in

Now listen and say the phrases.



- Mark, Amanda and Yeong-min check in at their hotel in Xi'an. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 马克有没有预订房间?
  - 2 服务员为什么要问马克的手机号码?
  - 3 阿曼达为什么打电话给服务员?



服务员: 您好! 欢迎光临古城宾馆。

马克: 你好。我们想办理入住。

服务员: 请问您预订房间了吗?

马克: 预订了。我叫Mark Johnson。

服务员: 请给我看一下你们的护照。

阿曼达和永民:给你。

服务员: 你们订了一个标准间和一个单人

间,一共四天,对吗?

马克: 对。

服务员:请填一下入住登记卡。

马克: 好的。……填完了,给你。

服务员: 谢谢。…… 请问您的手机号码是

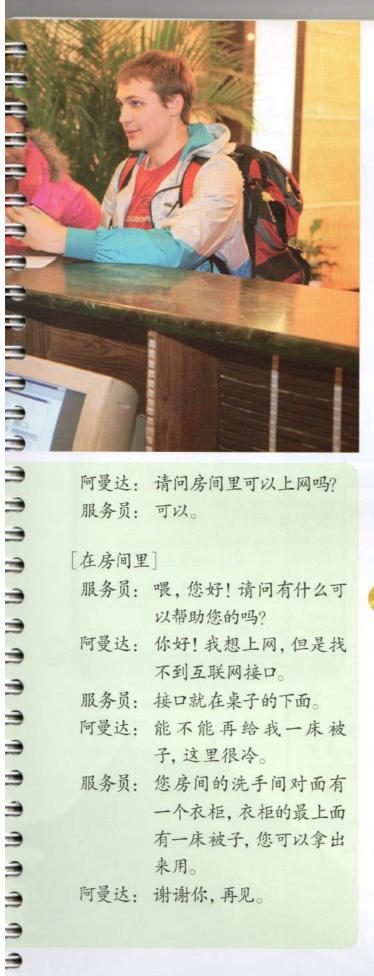
16628958963吗?

马克: 不是, 我的手机号是16628958763。

这是7. 不是9。

服务员: 好的, 你们的房间号是826和832。这

是房卡。



阿曼达: 请问房间里可以上网吗? 服务员:可以。

在房间里

服务员: 喂, 您好! 请问有什么可

以帮助您的吗?

阿曼达: 你好! 我想上网, 但是找

不到互联网接口。

服务员:接口就在桌子的下面。

阿曼达: 能不能再给我一床被

子,这里很冷。

服务员: 您房间的洗手间对面有

一个衣柜, 衣柜的最上面

有一床被子, 您可以拿出

来用。

阿曼达: 谢谢你, 再见。

#### 生词 New words

fúwùyuán 服务员 huānyíng	attendant, waiter, waitress	shàngwǎng 上网 lǐ	go online
欢迎 guānglín	welcome	里	in, inside
光临	come, be present	wéi 喂	hello, hey
bànlĭ	handle,	bāngzhù	nello, ney
办理 rùzhù	process	帮助hùliánwăng	help
入住	check in	互联网	the Internet
yùdìng 预订	reserve; reservation	jiēkǒu 接口	connection,
hùzhào		zhuōzi	interface
护照 biāozhǔn	passport	桌子xiàmian	desk, table
标准	standard	下面	under, beneath
dānrén 单人	single (person)	bèizi 被子	11.
yīgòng	altogether, in	yīguì	quilt
一共 tián	total	衣柜	wardrobe
填	fill in	ná 拿	take, get
dēngjì 登记	register	chū 出	
32.0	register	ш	go/come out

-	
0	Listen again and check the correct words
1-41	phrases to complete the sentences.

1 服务员要看他们的 \_\_\_\_\_ □ a护照 □ b登记卡 2 互联网接口在\_\_\_\_。 □ a 衣柜的上面 □ b 桌子的下面

Work in pairs. Look at the booking information and act out a conversation between the receptionist at a hotel and a tourist checking into the hotel.

# 华伟酒店

马大伟 姓名 天数 两天 房间 一个单人间 房价 ¥500/天

# Pronunciation and speaking

Tone sandhi: 3rd + 3rd tones

- Look at the tone marks for the first character of each word. How does the tone change?
  - 1 你好

ní hǎo

2 洗手间

xíshŏujiān

3 给你

qéi nǐ

4 可以

kéyĭ

Now listen and repeat.

- Listen and check the tones you hear.
  - 1 我想
- wó xiảng
- wŏ xiănq

- 2 很冷
- hén lěng
- hěn lěng

- 3 景点
- jíngdiǎn
- jingdián

- 4 很好
- hén hǎo
- hěn hǎo

Now listen again and repeat.



Say the sentences aloud.

Kéyĭ géi wŏ kàn yíxià nín de hùzhào ma

- 1 可以给我看一下您的护照吗? Wó xiảng qù hěnduō hảowán de jíngdiản
- 2 我 想 去 很多 好玩 的 景点。 Wǒ kéyǐ géi nǐ zhǎo yíxià
- 3 我可以给你找一下。

Now listen and repeat.



Listen and say the words.

- yīguì 1 衣柜 hùzhào 2 护照
- zhuōzi 桌子
- yĭzi 椅子
- xíshŏujiān 洗手间 dēngjì kă

duìmiàn

- bèizi 被子
- jiēkŏu 接口
- 登记卡 shàngmian

- 3 对面
- xiàmian 下面
- pángbiān 旁边
- 上面

- Write down what things would be in your dream hotel room and their locations.
- Mork in pairs.

Student A: Describe your hotel room to Student B using the information in Activity 5.

Student B: Draw a picture of Student A's room.

Now change roles.

Check each other's pictures to see if they match the description in Activity 5.

#### CHINESE TO GO

Accommodation expressions

Yǒu kòng fáng ma 有空房吗?

Do you have any vacancies?

Bāo zǎocān ma

包早餐吗?

Is breakfast included?

Wó xiảng dìng fáng

I'd like to book a

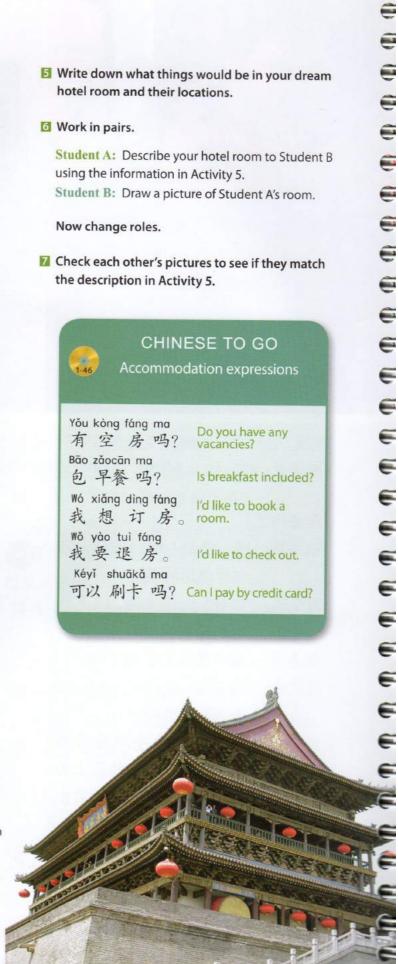
我想订房。 Wǒ yào tuì fáng

我要退房。

I'd like to check out.

Kéyĭ shuākă ma

可以刷卡吗? Can I pay by credit card?



#### Reading and writing

Match the words with the things in the picture.



- máojin □ a 毛巾
- féizào □ d 肥皂
- yáshuā
- tìxūdāo
- □ b 牙刷
- e剃须刀
- yágāo □ c 牙膏
- shūzi □ f 梳子

Now check the things you use every day.



€

- Read the website comments from Amanda and another hotel guest about the hotel in Xi'an, and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达觉得古城宾馆 怎么样?
  - 2 王伟觉得这个宾馆 怎么样?

#### 生词 New words

jiē street 街 chuángdān bed sheet 床单 máojin towel 毛巾 gānjìng clean 干净 rìyòngpǐn daily 日用品 necessities yágāo toothpaste 牙膏 yáshuā

féizào lìngwài soap 肥皂 另外 shūzi ziji comb 梳子 miănfèi free of 免费 charge xĭyī wash 洗衣 clothes 长 ΧĬ wash 洗 宽 gòu zhènghảo just right 正好

oneself 自己 diànnăo computer 中脑 cháng long; length kuān wide; width adequate, enough gèzi height, comfortable 个子 stature

in addition.

besides

toothbrush

shūfu

舒服

请选择 💠 🔍

搜索

#### 旅游宝典

牙刷

古城宾馆

#### 搜虎旅游 | 景点大全>陕西>西安

#### 用户评级 0000

#### 動 208人推荐

星级:★★★ 地区:西安市中心 ₹ 45人不推荐

地址: 西安市西大街18号



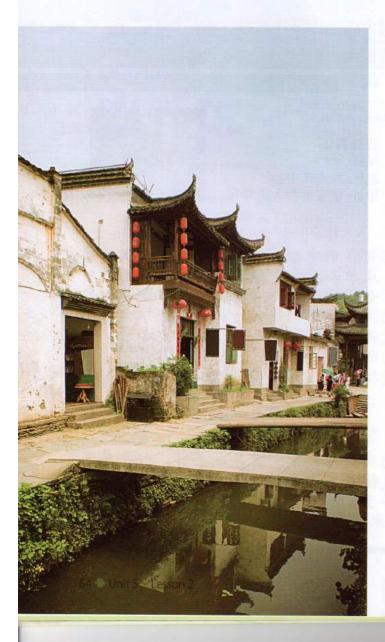
#### **新** 推 荐 阿曼达 发表于: 2011-2-7

这个宾馆在市中心,交通很方便。这里的房 间很不错,床单和毛巾都很干净。房间里的日用 品,比如牙膏、牙刷、肥皂和梳子等,都是免费 的。宾馆的洗衣服务又快又好,我下午拿大衣去 洗,晚上就洗好了。有些人觉得房间太小了,但 是我觉得房间的大小正好,很舒服。另外,房间 里有互联网接口, 我可以用自己的电脑上网, 很 方便。

#### → 不推荐 王伟 发表于: 2011-2-5

宾馆的交通很方便, 服务也很好, 但是房间 太小了。我住的房间长3米, 宽2.5米, 比其他宾馆 的房间小多了。房间里的床也不够大,单人床长 1.8米, 宽1.2米, 个子高的人就不够用。

- □ 1 房间里的毛巾和床单不太干净。
- □ 2 房间里的日用品都是免费的。
- □ 3 阿曼达觉得房间太小了。
- □ 4 王伟觉得房间和床的大小正好。
- Read again and list the positive and negative things Amanda and Wang Wei said about the hotel.
- Write some comments about a hotel you know, including transportation, room facilities and service. Describe both the good and bad points. Use the descriptions in Activity 2 to help you.



#### Language in use

Expressing possession, existence or location with



#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Noun phrase	
我	有	中文报纸。	
她	有	一件大衣。	
学校	有	很多教室。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有 is used to say that someone possesses something.
- The subject of a possessive sentence with 有 must be a person.
- □ 3 有 means "have", "own" or "possess".

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject Attribute Location			
		Verb	Noun phrase
洗手间的	对面	有	一个衣柜。
衣柜的	最上面	有	一床被子。
学校	附近	没有	超市。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 有 is used to express the existence or location of a place or something in relation to another.
- The location phrase often contains a place or object that is smaller in size than what is contained in the noun phrase.
- □ 3 有 means "exist" or "there is/are".

#### **B** Answer the questions using 有.

- 1 学校附近有什么?
- 2 教室里有什么?
- 3 你有哥哥或者姐姐吗? 你家有几个人?

Expressing adequacy with

够/不够

Look at the sentences.

Adjective phrase	Subject	Verb	Complement
这个	房子	够	大。
我的	时间		
	饭菜	不够	吃。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 够 and 不够 are used to express whether something is sufficient for a particular purpose.
- 2 The complement of the verb is can be an adjective or a verb.
- □ 3 够 and 不够 can be put after the complement to express adequacy.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 This dress is not long enough.
- 2 There is enough time to finish the homework.
- 3 There are enough people to complete the work.

Complements expressing result

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Complement
我	填	完了。
衣服	洗	好了。
我	找	不到接口。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- Only an adjective can be used after a verb to indicate the result of an action.
- 2 After a verb, another verb or verb phrase can be used to indicate the result of an action.
- The subject of the verb can be a person or a thing.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- I have finished doing my homework.
- 2 Did you see her?
- 3 Dinner is ready.

Questions

about size with (有) 多大/长/宽

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
Jubject	Verb	Question word	
房间	(有)	多大/长/宽?	
单人床	(有)	多大/长/宽?	

Subject	Measurement	Size	Measurement
房间	长	3米。	
房间	宽	2.5米。	
房子	(有)	3米	高。
单人床	长	1.8米。	
单人床	宽	1.2米。	
桌子	(有)	1米	宽。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 8 is used before words expressing measurements to form question words about size.
- The words expressing measurements can be put before or after the words for size.
- 3 A verb is required in sentences stating sizes.

#### Answer the questions with your own information.

- 1 你多高?
- 2 你家的房子多大?
- 3 你的房间多大?

Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

#### Communication activity

Work in groups of four. You are going on a trip to Beijing and need to find a hotel. Compare the hotel listings below and choose the one you like best.

#### 旅游宝典

景区大全

景区美图 | 旅游线路

搜虎旅游 | 景点大全>北京

#### 华伟酒店

\*\*\*

• 房间又大又舒服: 标准间长10米, 宽5米



- 免费洗衣、日用品
- 房价比较贵, 1300元/天
- 到机场坐出租车大约5分钟,到市中心坐出租车要30分钟左右。

#### 朝阳宾馆

\*\*\* 600



- 房间不大不小:标准间长8米,宽4米
- 免费日用品,可以上网
- 房价不贵, 800元/天
- 离朝阳公园很近,到天安门坐出租车只要15分钟。

#### 前门宾馆

\* 88



- 房间比较小: 标准间长4米, 宽3米
- 单人床不够大,公用洗手间,免费 旅游指南
- 房价很便宜,400元/天,但是服务 不太好。
- 在市中心,离天安门200米,交通很方便。
- 2 Make a list of the reasons for your choice.
- 3 Present your choice and reasons to another group.
- Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

# Family inns in the countryside

Chinese people are well known for their hospitality. Hosts are expected to serve their guests with the best they have to make them feel at home. This is generally true in the country, where farmers or peasants provide free shelter and food even to strangers.

Due to the hustle and bustle of city life, the countryside is becoming a popular holiday destination for China's urban residents. Family inns in the countryside developed from traditional hospitality and are run by local villagers who open up their own houses to accommodate travellers.

At family inns, guests are served homemade meals prepared by their hosts using local ingredients. They participate in farm work, experience the quiet and relaxing pace of life in the country, and enjoy the beautiful country scenery. Family inns are becoming more and more popular because of their modest cost, the hospitality of local people, and the simple, relaxing environment.



## **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
方	square, side	旅、旁
八	eight	分、公

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 只房兵方

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1一共

- a convenient
- 2 房间
- **b** kilometre
- 3 方便
- c in total
- 4 公里
- d room
- Trace the characters in the boxes.



#### Review and practice

- II Put the sentences in the correct order.
  - a 请您填一下入住登记卡。
  - b 再见!
  - c 可以给我看一下您的护照吗?
  - d 您的房间号是826。
  - e 欢迎光临!
  - f 您需要什么帮助?
  - g希望您住得开心。
  - h 请问您预订房间了吗?

Now work in pairs. Act out the conversation between a hotel receptionist and a hotel guest.

Write three sentences about the position of three objects you can see in the picture, using 有.



- **B** Answer the questions, using 够.
  - 1 你每天睡几个小时? 你觉得睡觉的时间够吗?
  - 2 今天的天气怎么样? 你穿的衣服够暖 和吗?
- Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the size of three objects you can see in the classroom.

# Vocabulary extension

Look at the buttons on a hotel telephone.



Now match the words with the meanings.

- a room service
- c front desk/reception
- b housekeeping
- d operator

Work in pairs. Talk about your most recent stay at a hotel. Try to use the words from Activity 1.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

	- Julius		
办理	bànlĭ	v.	handle, proces
	bāngzhù	v./n.	help
被子	bèlzi	n.	A market market su
标准	biāozhŭn	n.	standard
	cháng	adj./n.	long; length
	chū	V.	go/come out
床单	chuángdān	n.	
单人	dänrén	n.	single (person)
登记	dēngjì	V.	
	diànnăo	n.	computer
肥皂	féizào	n.	<u>EEEE EEEE</u>
服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	attendant, waiter, waitress
干净	gānjìng	adj.	clean
	gèzi	n.	height, stature
够	gòu	V.	
光临	guānglín	V.	come, be present
互联网	hùliánwăng	n.	
护照	hùzhào	n.	
-	huānying	V.	welcome
街	jiē	n.	street
接口	jiēkŏu	n.	connection, interface
宽	kuān	adj./n.	
	lĭ	n.	in, inside
另外	lìngwài	conj.	in addition, besides
毛巾	máojin	n.	towel
免费	miănfèi	adj.	

拿	ná	v.	
日用品	rìyòngpĭn	n.	
	rùzhù	v.	check in
上网	shàngwăng	v.	go online
舒服	shūfu	adj.	comfortable
梳子	shūzi	n.	
填	tián	v.	fill in
	wéi	interj.	hello, hey
洗	xĭ	v.	wash
	xĭyī	V.	wash clothes
下面	xiàmian	n.	
牙膏	yágão	n.	toothpaste
牙刷	yáshuā	n.	toothbrush
	yīgòng	adv.	altogether, in total
衣柜	yīguì	n.	wardrobe
预订	yùdìng	v.	
正好	zhènghǎo	adj.	just right
-	zhuōzi	n.	desk, table
自己	zìjĭ	pron.	oneself
客房部	kèfángbù	n.	housekeeping
前台	qiántái	n.	front desk/ reception
沙发	shāfā	n.	sofa
送餐服务	sòngcān fúwù	n.	room service
剃须刀	tìxūdāo	n.	razor
椅子	yĭzi	n.	chair
总机	zŏngjī	n.	operator



# Vocabulary and listening



Match the signs with the meanings.









jìnzhǐ pāizhào 1禁止拍照 ānjìng

3 安静

bùdé rùnèi 2不得入内 yánjìn yĭnshí

4严禁饮食

Now listen and say the phrases.



- Mark, Amanda and Yeong-min go to see the Terracotta Warriors. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 2 兵马俑是谁发现的?

售票员: 您好。

马克: 你好。请给我三张学生票。

售票员: 可以给我看看学生证吗?

马克: 给你。

售票员:谢谢。这是三张票,一共是135元。

你们的导游会在入口处等你们。

# [在博物馆里]

永民: 请问兵马俑是怎么被发现的?

导游: 1974年, 当地的农民在打井的时

候发现了兵马俑。这个兵俑高

1.83米,和真人差不多高。

阿曼达: 当时的中国人真的有1.83米高吗?

现在大部分人都没有那么高。

导游: 它可能比当时的人高一点儿。

永民: 这个兵俑看起来很像我们的汉

语老师——丁老师, 你们觉得呢?



阿曼达: 是啊, 他看起来很像我 们没交作业时的丁老 师,哈哈……

导游:嘘……请安静,这里不 能大声说话。

马克: 我们应该拍张照片送给 丁老师。

永民: 等一下, 那个告示牌上 写着"禁止拍照"。

马克: 对不起, 我没有看到。

阿曼达: 我想过去看看那个兵马 俑有多高。

马克: 不要过去,这个告示牌

上写着"不得入内"。

阿曼达: 啊?什么都不可以……

# THE THE THE PART OF THE PART O

#### 生词 New words

shòupiàoyuán		Hànyǔ	Chinese
售票员	ticket seller	汉语	language
zhèng		хū	
证	certificate	嘘	shh
dăoyóu		ānjing	
导游	tour guide	安静	silent
rùkŏuchù		shēng	
入口处	entrance	声	voice, sound
děna		sòng	alua (a.a.
等	wait (for)	送	give (as a gift); send
bèi	(for passing	gàoshìpái	
被	(for passive voice)	告示牌	sign, noticeboard
fāxiàn	VOICE	zhe	(used to
发现	discover	着	indicate
dāngdì		E	continuation
当地	local		of action or
nóngmín			state)
农民	farmer; rural	jìnzhĭ	Combina
dă jing	people	禁止	forbid
打井	dig a well		
dāngshí			
当时	at that time		
国则			



- El Listen again and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 他们的导游会在售票处等他们。
  - □ 2 那个兵俑和当时的中国人一样高。
  - □ 3 博物馆里不能拍照。
- 4 Work in pairs. Look at the signs and guess the meanings.





Make some signs showing rules for visitors to your home. Don't use any words on your signs.

Now work in pairs. Guess the meanings of your partner's signs.

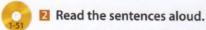
# Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "ü" and "üe"

Check the correct finals for the underlined characters.

1 学生	ü	üe
2 汉语	ü	üe
3 觉得	ü	üe
4 大约	ü	üe
5 京剧	ü	üe
6 音乐	ü	üe

Now listen and repeat.



Míngtiān huì xià dà yǔ

- 1 明天 会下大雨。
- Wǒ juéde jīngjù hěn hǎotīng 2 我觉得京剧很好听。
- Jīnnián liùyuè wǒ yào qù Guìlín lǔyóu
- 3 今年 六月我要去桂林旅游。 Wáng Yù hé Măkè yào qù tīng yīnyuèhuì
- 4 王玉和马克要去听音乐会。 Xīn tóngxué de jiā zŏulù dàyuē shí fēnzhōng
- 5 新 同学 的家走路大约十 分钟。

Now listen and repeat.

Listen and say the words.

gàoshìpái	jìnzhǐ	bùdé	ānjìng
1 告示牌	禁止	不得	安静
shòupiàoyuán	dǎoyóu	nóngmín	rùkǒuchù
2 售票员	导游	农民	入口处
kànqǐlái	dāngshí	fāxiàn	dǎ jǐng
3 看起来	当时	发现	打井

Write down information about a famous historical site that you are familiar with, including its location, size, how old it is, what it is for and why it is significant.

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's sites. Try to work out what your partner's site is.

#### CHINESE TO GO

Expressions for visiting

English brochure?

Jǐ diǎn kāimén 几点 开门? What time do you open? Ménpiào duōshao qián yī zhāng How much is 门票 多少钱一张? Chūkŏu zài năr 出口在哪儿? Where is the exit? Jiănjiè yǒu Yīngwén de ma Do you have an 简介有英文的吗?



#### Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Discuss what you know about these words.

Hàncháo 1 汉朝 tángrén 2 唐人 hànzì 3 汉字

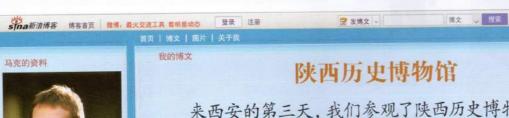


- Read Mark's online post about his trip to the Shaanxi History Museum and answer the questions.
  - 1 什么是"汉语"?它是怎样得名的?
  - 2 为什么中国城被称为"唐人街"?

#### 生词 New words

yú wàn ten 干 万 thousand wénzì wénwù cultural 文字 文物 relic, artefact liăojiě get to 强盛 了解 know, understand 朝代 shù number, zhiyi 数 figure 之一 mínzú ethnic hăiwài 民族 group 海外 Hànzú Han chēng 汉族 ethnicity 称 déming get one's suŏyĭ 得名 name 所以

yú
于 at, in
wénzì
文字 script
qiángshèng powerful,
prosperous
cháodài
朝代 dynasty
zhīyī
之一 one of
hǎiwài
海外 overseas
chēng
称 call; weigh
suǒyǐ therefore,



来西安的第三天,我们参观了陕西历史博物馆。博物馆里有37万件文物,是了解中国历史的好地方。

博物馆里有很多汉朝的文物。中国人数最多的民族 是汉族,得名于汉朝(公元 前206年—公元220年)。汉族

前206年—公元220年)。汉族 人说的话叫汉语,他们用的文 字叫汉字。当然现在大部分中 国人都会说汉语,写汉字。

这是唐朝的文物,叫唐三彩。唐朝 (公元 618年—907年)是中国历史上最强盛的朝代之一。最早去海外的中国人称他们自己为唐人,所以中国城也叫唐人街。



- Read again and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 陕西历史博物馆有370,000 件文物。
  - □ 2 汉族是中国人数最少的 民族。
  - □ 3 唐三彩是汉朝的文物。
  - □ 4 唐人街是中国人住的地方。
- Complete the timeline using the information in Mark's online post.



Write about a historical period that you are familiar with, including its timeframe, notable people and what it is famous for.

# Language in use

Expressing passive voice using

被

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Adverb	Verb	Object	Complement
当地的 农民		发现了	兵马俑。	
南方人		称	他们自己	为"唐人"。
马克		拿走了	永民的护照。	
弟弟	没	吃	你的饺子。	

Subject	A discourts	Adverbial			
Subject	Adverb	被	Doer	Verb	Complement
兵马俑		被	当地的 农民	发现	了。
南方人		被	(他们自己)	称	为"唐人"。
永民的护照		被	(马克)	拿	走了。
你的饺子	没	被	(弟弟)	吃	了。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 被 is used to make a passive sentence, emphasizing the subject being acted upon.
- 2 被 can be placed after the verb in the passive voice.
- 3 The doer of the action can be omitted in the passive voice.

#### Rewrite the sentences using 被.

- 1 她吃了我的晚饭。
- 2 他拿走了我的书。
- 3 人们称她为"马大姐"。
- 4 人们称海外中国人住的地方为唐人街。

Expressing a continuing

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Auxiliary word	Complement
这个告示牌上	写	着	"禁止拍照"。
那个告示牌上	写	着	"不得入内"。
桌子上	放	着	两张电影票。
王玉家门口	贴	着	春联。
她	穿	着	一件大衣。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 着 is used after a verb to indicate the continuation of an action or a state.
- 2 着 is used after a verb only to indicate an ongoing action in the present.
- □ 3 着 is used before the complement of the verb.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese using 着.

- 1 A book is on the table.
- 2 I'm wearing a green T-shirt.
- 3 Two red lanterns are hanging on the gate.

#### 是……的

constructions

#### Look at the sentences.

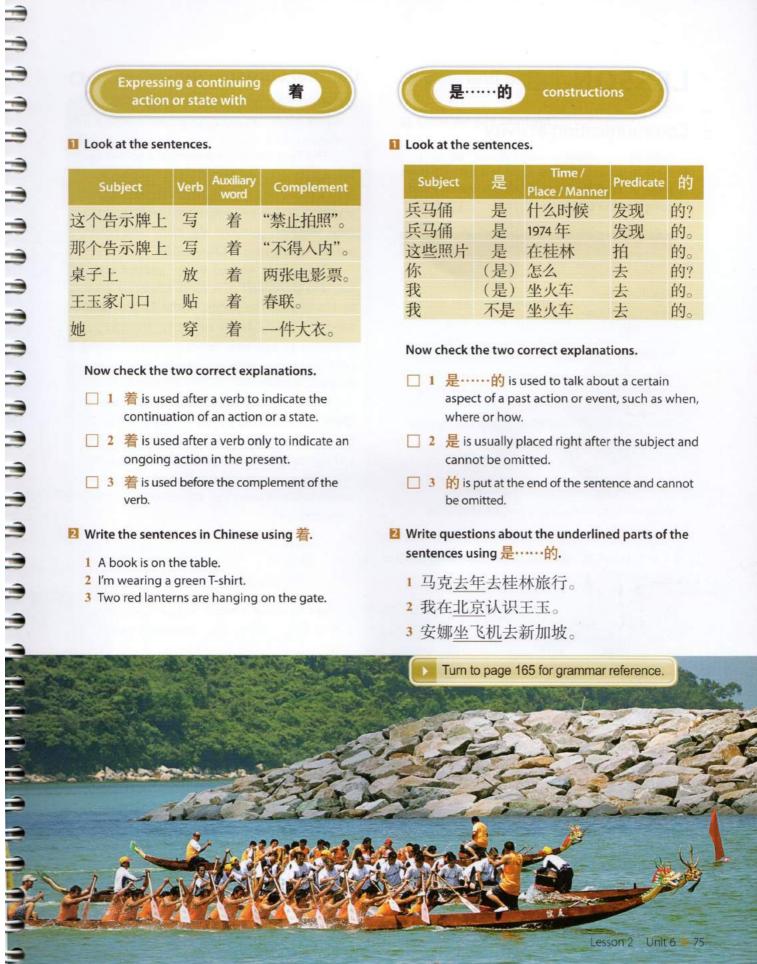
Subject	是	Time / Place / Manner	Predicate	的
兵马俑	是	什么时候	发现	的?
兵马俑	是	1974年	发现	的。
这些照片	是	在桂林	拍	的。
你	(是)	怎么	去	的?
我	(是)	坐火车	去	的。
我	不是	坐火车	去	的。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 是·····的 is used to talk about a certain aspect of a past action or event, such as when, where or how.
- □ 2 是 is usually placed right after the subject and cannot be omitted.
- □ 3 的 is put at the end of the sentence and cannot be omitted.

#### Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 是……的.

- 1 马克去年去桂林旅行。
- 2 我在北京认识王玉。
- 3 安娜坐飞机去新加坡。



# Communication activity

Work in groups of three. Choose a dynasty from page 74. Find out more about this dynasty and complete the table.

Dynasty
Time period
Notable people
Most important city
Why it is famous
Museum(s) to recommend

Now prepare a presentation about the dynasty. Find pictures to make your presentation interesting.

- 2 Work with two other groups who chose different dynasties. Give your presentation.
- Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.



Unit 6 Lesson 3

#### **Cultural Corner**

# Tang poetry

The Tang dynasty represented a golden age for Chinese poetry. Over 40,000 poems by more than 2,000 poets survive from the period, and doubtless many more poems were written at the time. Although centuries old, many Tang poems are still widely read in China today.

Tang poets worked in the ancient style, but also developed new forms requiring great technical skill. The poems of the Tang dynasty have a wide range of subjects, from social concerns to patriotic fervour, encompassing realism, romanticism, natural beauty and personal feelings.

The Tang era saw the birth of some of China's most famous poets, including Li Bai, Du Fu, Wang Wei and Bai Juyi. Poems by these poets and others became the prototypes for centuries of Chinese poetry that followed, and many people in China today can still recite one or two from memory.

Jìng yè sī

静夜思 李白

In the Still of the Night by Li Bai

Chuáng qián míngyuè guāng 前 明月

明月,

Yí shì dìshàng shuāng 疑是 地上 Jůtóu wàng míngyuè

Dītóu sī gùxiāng 低头思 故乡。 Bright moonlight at the foot of my bed. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Could there have been a frost already?

Lifting my head, I look to the bright moon.

Sinking back again, I think of home.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
3	bristle	影、彩
广	cliff	厅、厨

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 雁衫参厕

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 参观
- a history
- 2 历史
- b living room
- 3 唐三彩
- 4 客厅
- e visit
- d three-colour glazed pottery of the Tang dynasty
- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

### **Review and practice**

- Circle the odd word out.
  - 1 民族 农民 导游 售票员
  - 2 文字 朝代 强盛 海外
  - 3 参观 发现 禁止 安静
  - 4送 所以 了解 得名
- Write the sentences in Chinese.
  - 1 My ticket was taken by him.
  - 2 Xi'an is known as an ancient city of history.
  - 3 This story book has been borrowed by Mark.
- Write two sentences about what you did yesterday.
- Now write questions about your sentences using 是……的.
- 4 Work in pairs. Talk about what you see in the classroom, using #1.
- Match the meanings with the signs.

售票处/在这里买票 2 禁止使用手机

安全出口/从这里离开 严禁饮食









# Vocabulary extension

Match the words with the signs.

shīwù zhāolǐng 1 失物 招领

jìnzhǐ yǐnjiǔ 2 禁止 饮酒

jìnzhǐ chǒngwù rù nèi 3 禁止 宠物 入内

jìnzhǐ xīyān 4 禁止吸烟

Now work in pairs. Write complete sentences to explain these signs.









# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

安静	ānjìng	adj.	silent
被	bèi	auxiliary word	(for passive voice)
朝代	cháodài	n.	dynasty
称	chēng	V.	call; weigh
打井	dă jĭng	V.	dig a well
当地	dāngdì	n.	
	dāngshí	n.	at that time
导游	dǎoyóu	n.	
得名	démíng	v.	get one's name
	děng	V.	wait (for)
发现	fāxiàn	V.	Y. I. I. I.
告示牌	gàoshìpái	n.	sign, noticeboard
海外	hǎiwài	n.	overseas
_	Hànyǔ	n.	Chinese language
汉族	Hànzú	n.	Han ethnicity
禁止	jìnzhĭ	V.	
了解	liăojiě	V.	
民族	mínzú	n.	ethnic group
	nóngmín	n.	farmer; rural people
强盛	qiángshèng	adj.	
入口处	rùkŏu chù	n.	entrance
声	shēng	n.	voice, sound

售票员	shòupiàoyuán	n.	
数	shù	n.	
	sòng	v.	give (as a gift); send
所以	suŏyĭ	conj.	
	wàn	num.	ten thousand
文物	wénwù	n.	cultural relic, artefact
	wénzì	n.	writing, script
嘘	хū	interj.	shh
于	yú	prep.	at, in
	zhe	auxiliary word	(used to indicate continuation
			of action or state)
证	zhèng	n.	certificate
之一	zhīyī	n.	
宠物	chŏngwù	n.	pet
入内	rùnèi	V.	enter
失物 招领	shīwù zhāolǐng		lost and found
吸烟	xīyān	V.	smoke tobacco
饮酒	yĭnjiŭ	V.	drink alcohol
饮食	yĭnshí	n./v.	food and drink; eat and drink

Sìchuan cài yòu má yòu 四川 Sichuan food is really spicy!

# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Guess the flavour of each dish using the words in the box.

má 麻	suān 酸	xián 成
là *d:	tián	xiāng
郑	甜	否



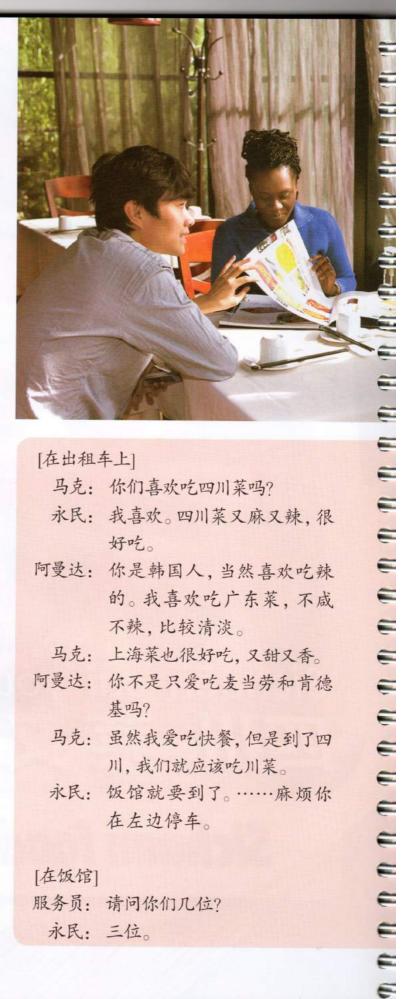
tángcùyú a 糖醋鱼



göngbǎo jīdīng b 宫保 鸡丁

Now listen and say the words.

- Mark, Yeong-min and Amanda are going out for lunch in Chengdu. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达喜欢吃什么?
  - 2 为什么马克说他们应该吃川菜?
  - 3 饭馆的拿手菜是什么?



# [在出租车上]

马克: 你们喜欢吃四川菜吗?

永民: 我喜欢。四川菜又麻又辣,很

好吃。

阿曼达: 你是韩国人, 当然喜欢吃辣

的。我喜欢吃广东菜,不咸

不辣,比较清淡。

马克: 上海菜也很好吃,又甜又香。

阿曼达: 你不是只爱吃麦当劳和肯德

基吗?

马克: 虽然我爱吃快餐, 但是到了四

川, 我们就应该吃川菜。

永民: 饭馆就要到了。……麻烦你

在左边停车。

### [在饭馆]

服务员: 请问你们几位?

永民: 三位。



服务员: 这边请。请问三位想喝

什么?

马克: 先给我来一瓶汽水。

阿曼达: 我要一杯苹果汁。

永民: 我要一杯水。

服务员: 这是菜单。

永民: 你们的拿手菜是什么?

服务员: 麻婆豆腐、宫保鸡丁,

还有水煮鱼。

永民: 就要这三个菜吧。

服务员: 还要其他菜吗?

阿曼达: 炒鸡蛋吧, 不辣。再要

三碗米饭。麻烦你再

给我们三双筷子和三

个勺子。

服务员:好的。请稍等,饭菜很

快就好。

#### 生词 New words

má	numb,	ping	
麻	numbing	瓶	bottle
là	112001120119	qìshuĭ	
辣	spicy, hot	汽水	soft drink
Hánguó	Republic of	bēi	
韩国	Korea	杯	cup, glass
xián	Norca	píngguŏ	
咸	salty	苹果	apple
qīngdàn	limbelu	shuĭ	
清淡	lightly flavoured	水	water
tián	navourcu	càidān	
甜	sweet	菜单	menu
ài		chǎo	
爱	love, like	炒	stir-fry
及 Màidāngláo		jīdàn	(alatabasa)
麦当劳	McDonald's	鸡蛋	(chicken)
		少虫 wǎn	egg
Kěndéjī	KFC	碗	bowl
肯德基		mĭfàn	
máfan	bother,		rice
麻烦	trouble	米饭	
zuŏ	left side, left	kuàizi	chopsticks
左	icit side, icit	筷子	
tíng	stop	sháozi	spoon
停		勺子	
wèi	(for a	shāo	a little,
位	person, respectful)	稍	slightly
	respectiui)		

#### Listen again and check the food they ordered.

- tángcùyú shuĭzhŭvú □ d 水煮鱼 □ a 糖醋鱼 chắo jīdàn gōngbǎo jīdīng □ e 炒鸡蛋 □ b 宫保 鸡丁 mápódòufu mĭfàn □ c 麻婆豆腐 □ f 米饭
- Match the cuisines with the flavours.
  - a又甜又香 1 四川菜 2 广东菜 b又麻又辣 3 上海菜 c比较清淡
- Mork in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the kinds of food you like, including the flavours.

# Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "en" and "eng"



Check the correct finals for the underlined characters.

1 很好吃	en	eng
2 肯德基	en	eng
3 请问	en	eng
4 <u>什</u> 么	en	<pre>eng</pre>
5 稍等	en en	eng
6 门口	en en	eng

Now listen and repeat.



Say the sentences aloud.

Nǐ xǐhuan năge chéngshì

- 1 你喜欢哪个城市?
- Chéngdū de Chuāncài hěn hǎochī
- 2 成都 的 川菜 很 好吃。
- Qǐng wèn fùjìn yǒu Kěndéjī ma 3 请问附近有肯德基吗?
- Tā zài xuéxiào ménkǒu děng nǐ
- 4 他在学校门口等你。
- Qǐng shāo děng yīshēng mǎshàng jiù lái le 5 请稍等, 医生 马上就来了。
- Now listen and repeat.



Listen and say the words.

1	má 麻	là 辣	qīngdàn 清淡	tián 甜	xián 咸
2	shuǐ 水	chá 茶	qìshuǐ 汽水	guǒzhī 果汁	
3	jiǎozi 饺子	mǐfàn 米饭	jīdàn 鸡蛋	Chuāncài 川菜	

Work in groups of three. List some typical Chinese dishes and common drinks you know. Think about their flavour.

Now use your list to create a menu.

5 Act out a conversation at a Chinese restaurant, using your menu from Activity 4.

Student A: You are the waiter. Ask your customers what they would like to eat and drink.

Students B and C: You are the customers. Ask about the flavour of the different dishes and tell the waiter what you would like to eat and drink.



#### CHINESE TO GO

Useful expressions in a restaurant

Fúwùyuán

服务员!

Waiter! / Waitress!

Măidān Jiézhàng

买单。/结帐。

The bill, please.

Dăbāo

打包。

Pack up this dish to take away.

Wŏ jiào wàimài

我叫外卖。I'd like to order a delivery/takeaway.

Wŏ chī sù

我吃素。

I'm a vegetarian.



### Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Tell each other which of the following ingredients your family often use when cooking.



- Read the recipe for mapo tofu and answer the questions.
  - 1 做麻婆豆腐需要哪些原料?
  - 2 应该先炒肉还是先炒豆腐?

# 学做中国菜——《麻婆豆腐》

# [原料]

豆腐300克,牛肉末100克(猪肉或者鸡肉也可以) 油少量,豆瓣酱两勺,花椒粉

油少量, 豆瓣酱两勺, 花椒粉少量, 葱、姜、蒜少量, 鸡汤

半碗

# [时间]

10-15

### [做法]



- ① 把豆腐切成小块,把葱、姜、蒜切成末。
- ② 把油放在锅里,加热;先 放姜,然后放肉,把肉炒 熟以后放在碗里。
- ③ 把油放在锅里,加热;先放葱、姜、蒜和豆瓣酱,炒香; 然后放豆腐和肉,炒两分钟; 再加入鸡汤,煮五分钟,最后加花椒粉。

### 生词 New words

yuánliào		dòubànjiàng					
原料	ingredient	豆瓣酱	spicy soybean paste	bǎ 把	(used to put the object of a	jiārè 加热	heat up
kè 克	gram	huājiāofěn 花椒粉	pepper powder	qiē 切	verb before it)	shú 熟	well done
niúròumò 牛肉末	minced beef	cōng 葱	spring onion	chéng 成	became, turn/	jiā hu	add
zhūròu 猪肉	pork	jiāng 姜	ginger	放 kuài 块	change into	zhǔ 煮	boil
jī 鸡	chicken	suàn 蒜	garlic	fàng 放	put, place	zuìhòu 最后	finally
yóu 油	oil	tāng 汤	soup	guō 锅	wok, pan	-1	
shǎoliàng 少量	small quantity	zuòfǎ 做法	method, cooking steps				







- Read the recipe again and put the ingredients in the order in which they are used.
  - □ a 鸡汤
- □ e 油
- □ b 姜末
- □ f 肉末
- □ c 葱、姜、蒜和豆瓣酱
- □ d 豆腐和炒熟的肉
- Choose a dish from the pictures on page 84 or 85. Guess the main ingredients and how to make it.

Now write the recipe.

Mork in pairs. Describe how to make your dish to each other without saying the name of the dish. Guess the name of the dish that is being described.





shuĭzhŭyú 水煮鱼

#### Language in use

Noun phrases with

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Ob	Noun phrase	
Subject	phrase	Mod	ifier	Head noun
永民	喜欢吃	辣	的	东西。
永民	喜欢吃	辣的。		
我	喜欢	黑色	的	裙子。
她	喜欢	白色的。		
这	不是	你	的	书。
这	不是	我的。		

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 的 is used after a modifier, which is usually a noun, pronoun or an adjective, to form a noun phrase.
- 2 A noun phrase with 的 should always contain a head noun.
- The head noun can be left out to avoid repetition if it is known in the context.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 I don't like red. Do you have black ones?
- 2 She likes to eat sweet food.
- 3 I didn't bring my book. Can I borrow yours?







#### Giving instructions using imperatives

#### Look at the sentences.

Adverbial	Verb	Object/Complement
先	放	姜。
再	加	鸡汤。
	煮	五分钟。
给我	打	电话。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Imperatives are used to give instructions, make requests or raise enquiries.
- Subjects are usually omitted from imperatives.
- There should always be a verb in an imperative, expressing the action needed.

#### Work in pairs.

**Student A:** Give two of the following instructions in Chinese.

Student B: Follow Student A's instructions.

- 1 Go to the front of the room and say your name.
- 2 Put your Chinese book under your desk.
- 3 Put your Chinese book on my desk.
- 4 Open your book and read two sentences aloud.

Now change roles.



#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	把	Object	Verb	Complement
	把	豆腐	切	成小块。
	把	油	放	在锅里。
她	把	被子	拿	出来了。
我	把	书	放	在桌子上。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 把 sentences are used to express the result of an action on an object.
- The action verb is always put before the object that it acts upon.
- 3 A complement should always be used after the action verb.

#### Make sentences, using ## and the given words.

- 1 鸡肉/切
- 2 葱/放
- 3 牛肉/切
- 4 中文书/放
- Turn to page 166 for grammar reference.

### Communication activity

#### Work in pairs.

Student A: You want to order a delivery from 辣婆婆 restaurant. Read the menu and decide which dishes you would like.

Student B: You are a new waiter at the restaurant. Familiarize yourself with the menu. Remember to ask the customer for their name, phone number and address when taking the order.



Now act out a phone conversation making the delivery order.

Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

# Eating out: ordering shared dishes

Traditionally, Chinese diners choose a collection of dishes to share for the table, rather than ordering individually. Sharing food is not only a great way to try out different dishes, but is also good for balancing the flavours and nutrition of the overall meal. A hot, spicy dish can be balanced by a sweet or a mild one.

Nowadays, communal serving spoons or chopsticks are often used for the shared dishes for reasons of hygiene, rather than picking up the food directly with one's own utensils. While western hosts often let guests serve themselves, Chinese hosts consider it imperative that they urge their guests to eat more, and will even insist on putting food on their guests' plates. "Fighting for the bill" is another act of politeness in Chinese culture that is often performed at the end of a restaurant meal. It is not considered essential to have dessert at the end of a meal, and Chinese menus usually don't have many varieties of dessert.

### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
米	rice	粘、糖
3	dog, animal	狗、狮

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 料 粉 猪 猫

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1原料
- a pork
- 2 花椒粉
- b ingredient
- 3 熊猫
- c pepper powder
- 4 猪肉

- d panda
- Trace the characters in the boxes.

# 

粉果果果果果

猫然然然然然

### Review and practice

- Complete the mini-dialogues.
  - 1 A: 您好!\_\_\_\_\_?
    - B: 三位。
    - A: \_\_\_\_\_o
  - 2 A: 请问, \_\_\_\_\_?
    - B: 我要一瓶汽水。
  - 3 B: \_\_\_\_\_?
    - A: 我们的拿手菜是水煮鱼。
- Number the steps for cooking spaghetti in the correct order.
  - □ a 加肉酱。
  - □ b 把煮熟的面拿出来,放在碗里。
  - □ c 把意大利面放在开水里, 煮15分钟。
  - □ d 把水放在锅里,煮开。
- **B** Work in pairs. Write instructions for how to boil an egg, using 把 sentences when appropriate.



# Vocabulary extension

Look at the words for some common drinks.

	coffee	hóngjiǔ 红酒 red wine
niúnǎi 牛奶	milk	báijiǔ 白酒 rice wine
kělè 可乐	cola	hóngchá 红茶 black tea

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your favourite drinks for breakfast, lunch and dinner.



# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

	ài	v.	love, like
把	bă	prep.	(used to put the object of a verb before it)
	bēi	n.	cup, glass
菜单	càidān	n.	
炒	chǎo	V.	
成	chéng	v.	become, turn/ change into
葱	cōng	n.	spring onion
豆瓣酱	dòubànjiàng	n.	spicy soybean paste
	fàng	V.	put, place
锅	guō	n.	wok, pan
韩国	Hánguó	n.	Republic of Korea
花椒粉	huājiāofěn	n.	pepper powder
鸡	jī	n.	chicken
	jīdàn	n.	(chicken) egg
	jiā	V.	add
加热	jiārè	V.	
姜	jiāng	n.	ginger
克	kè	measure word	
肯德基	Kěndéjī	n.	KFC
	kuài	n.	piece
筷子	kuàizi	n.	chopsticks
辣	là	adj.	
麻	má	adj.	numb, numbing
麻烦	máfan	V.	
麦当劳	Màidāngláo	n.	McDonald's
	mĭfàn	n.	rice
牛肉末	niúròumò	n.	
瓶	píng	n.	bottle
	píngguŏ	n.	apple

汽水	qìshuĭ	n.	
切	qiē	v.	cut
清淡	qīngdàn	adj.	
稍	shāo	adv.	a little, slightly
	sháozi	n.	spoon
少量	shǎoliàng	adj.	small quantity
熟	shú	adj.	
	shuĭ	n.	water
蒜	suàn	n.	garlic
	tāng	n.	soup
甜	tián	adj.	
	ting	V.	stop
碗	wăn	n.	bowl
	wèi	measure word	(for a person, respectful)
咸	xián	adj.	
	yóu	n.	oil
原料	yuánliào	n.	ingredients
猪肉	zhūròu	n.	pork
煮	zhǔ	v.	
	zuìhòu	n.	finally
	zuŏ	n.	left side, left
做法	zuòfă	n.	method, cooking steps
白酒	báijiǔ	n.	rice wine
红茶	hóngchá	n.	black tea
红酒	hóngjiŭ	n.	red wine
咖啡	kāfēi	n.	coffee
可乐	kělè	n.	cola
牛奶	niúnăi	n.	milk
24			

adj.

sour

suān



# LESSON | 1

# Vocabulary and listening

Check the souvenirs you would like to buy in China.



wánjù □ 玩具

Ì

tángzhuāng 唐装

chájù 二茶具

máobǐ □ 毛笔

Now listen and say the words.



- Mark, Amanda and Yeong-min are at a market in Chengdu. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 马克为什么要买玩具熊猫?
  - 2 为什么他说售货员的普通话很好?
  - 3 阿曼达跟马克他们一起回宾馆吗?

售货员: 你们好! 进来看一看吧。

马克: 小姐,这个熊猫多少钱?

售货员: 很便宜,七十块。

马克: 太贵了,可以便宜一点儿吗?

售货员:好吧,那就便宜一点儿。五十块

怎么样?

阿曼达: 我们是学生,钱不多。再便宜一点

儿吧。三十块好不好?

售货员: 你们真会讲价。三十块卖给你吧。

马克: 谢谢。永民, 你觉得王玉会喜欢

这个熊猫吗?

永民: 她一定喜欢! 但是你怎么带回去

呢? 我们的行李已经太多了。

阿曼达: 还是邮寄吧。宾馆附近有邮局。

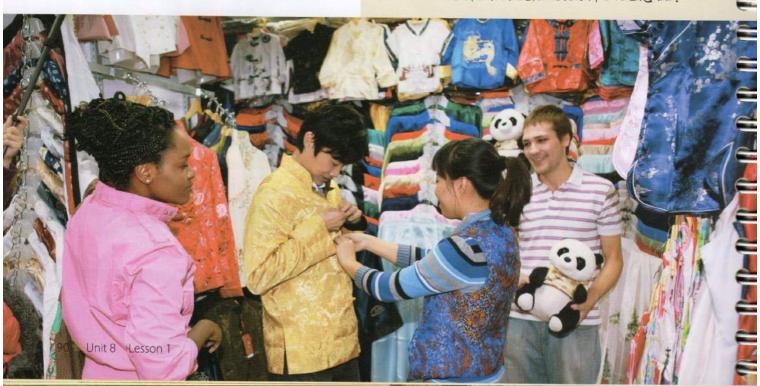
我还想给家人寄明信片呢。

售货员: 你们是第一次来成都吗? 普通话

说得不错啊。

马克: 你的普通话也很好啊! 你说我们

的韩国朋友应该买什么纪念品?



售货员: 这件唐装怎么样? 颜色很好看, 很有中国味道。

永民: 我可以试一试吗?

售货员:没问题。这件唐装是真丝的,

穿着很舒服。

阿曼达: 很帅啊!马克、永民,我想去那边看看,我们一会儿在宾馆见。

马克和永民: 好, 一会儿见!

### 「在邮局」

马克: 麻烦您, 我想寄这个包裹到北京。

工作人员: 你需要填这张表。你看得懂吗?

马克: 没问题。……填完了,给你。

工作人员: 先称一下重量。……一点二公斤,

平邮七块三毛,空邮十二块八毛。

马克: 平邮多长时间? 空邮多长时间?

工作人员: 平邮两个星期左右,空邮五天就到。

马克: 我寄空邮,给你钱。

工作人员: 十三块, 找你两毛。

马克: 谢谢, 再见。

# 2-10

#### El Listen again and complete the sentences.

- 1 售货员说他们很会 \_\_\_\_\_。
- 2 马克买的熊猫便宜了\_\_\_\_元。
- 3 邮局在宾馆的 \_\_\_\_\_。
- 4 永民试穿的唐装是\_\_\_\_\_的。

#### Work in pairs. Act out the conversation.

Student A: You work at a post office.

Student B: You want to send one of the following items from the post office.



- 1 唐装:寄去日本,0.5公斤, 平邮50元,空邮80元
- 2 茶具:寄去澳大利亚,1公斤,平邮90元,空邮120元

Now change roles.

### 生词 New words

v words				
bargain	jìniànpǐn 纪念品	souvenir	dŏng 懂	understand
sell	tángzhuāng 唐装	traditional Chinese clothes	chēng 称	weigh
definitely, for sure	wèidào 味道	taste, feel	zhòngliàng 重量	weight
luggage	zhēnsī 真丝	real silk, 100% silk	gōngjīn 公斤	kilogram
post, send by	yīhuìr 一会儿	a little while	píngyóu 平邮	ordinary postage, surface mail
postcard	bāoguǒ 包裹	parcel, package	máo 毛	Chinese currency unit; jiao (coll.)
Mandarin Chinese	biǎo gé 表(格)	form, table	kōngyóu 空邮	air mail
	bargain sell definitely, for sure luggage post, send by post postcard Mandarin	bargain  sell  definitely, for sure  luggage  post, send by post  postcard  Mandarin  jìniànpǐn 纪念品 tángzhuāng 唐装 wèidào 味道 zhēnsī 真丝 yīhuìr 一会儿 bāoguǒ 包裹 biǎo gé	jìniànpǐn 纪念品 souvenir 纪念品 tángzhuāng traditional 唐装 Chinese clothes wèidào sure wèidào sure uggage zhēnsī real silk, 100% silk yīhuir —会儿 bāoguǒ postcard 包裹 parcel, package biǎo gé	bargain jìniànpǐn souvenir 懂 chēng 经合品 parcel, package limiàng yiniàng traditional chēng 表 Chinese clothes 称 chēng chēng 表 Chinese clothes 称 chōngliàng 主要量 zhēnsī real silk, 100% gōngjīn silk 公斤 píngyóu 平邮 postcard 包裹 parcel, package 表ongyóu

# Pronunciation and speaking

The finals: "ian" and "üan"

<b>● ■ Check t</b> 1 便	he correct fi	nals for ian	the character
70000000			üan
2 元		ian	üan
3 点	Tall Inc	ian	üan
4 钱		ian	üan
			the underline
2 Check t charact	he correct fi ers.	nals for	
2 Check the character 1 便宜	he correct fi ers.	nals for	üan
2 Check t	he correct fi ers.	nals for	
2 Check the character 1 便宜	he correct filers.	nals for	üan
2 Check the characters 1 便宜 2 一点	he correct fi ers. [几 口	nals for ian ian	☐ üan
2 Check the characters 1 便宜 2 一点 3 明信	he correct fi ers.	ian ian ian ian	Uan üan üan üan

Now listen and repeat.



Túshūguǎn de qiánbian yǒu jǐ gè yǎnyuán 图书馆 的 前边 右几个 演员

1 图书馆的前边有几个演员。

wǒ xiǎng zuò zhìyuànzhě huòzhě yùndòngyuán 2 我 想 做 志愿者 或者 运动员。

7 心 风 心心日 久日 足功久

Wáng Yù zài gōngyuán ménkǒu tián wènjuàn 3 王 玉在 公园 门口 填 问卷。

Mă Yuán măi de jîniànpĭn hěn piányi

4 马园买的纪念品很便宜。

Now listen and repeat.





#### Listen and say the words.

jìniànpǐn 1 纪念品	wánjù 玩具	míngxìnp 明信月		
wèidào	zhēnsī	shūfu	hǎok	
2 味道	真丝	舒服	好	
Tàiguì le		Piányi	yīdiǎnr	ba
3 太贵了!		便宜 -	一点儿	吧。

#### **5** Work in pairs.

**Student A:** Find five items in your bag that you would like to sell, and decide the price of each item.

**Student B:** Choose three items you would like to buy from Student A, and bargain for the lowest possible price for each one.

Now change roles.



买一送

#### CHINESE TO GO

Shopping expressions

Zhège zěnme mài 这个怎么卖? How much is this? Shí kuài qián yī jīn 十块钱一斤。 Ten yuan per 500 grams. Kěyĭ dăzhé ma 可以 打折 吗? Can you give any discount? Dă qī zhé 打七折。 30% off. Yǒu yōuhuì ma 有优惠吗? Is there a special offer? Mǎi yī sòng yī

Buy one, get one free.

#### Reading and writing

Match the nouns with the appropriate descriptions.

gănjué	hěn dìdao
1 感觉	a 很地道
yàngzi	hěn piàolian
2 样子	b 很 漂亮
chájù	shūfu
3 茶具	c 舒服
Chuāncài	hěn shuài
4 川菜	d 很 帅

Read Amanda's email to Wang Yu about her visit to Chengdu.

ı	The state of the s	de la Constitución de la constit		
	zuótiān 昨天	yesterday	pà 怕	be afraid, fear
	jiā 家	(used for families or companies)	suŏyŏu 所有	all
	lǎo 老	old	guāng 光	used up, all gone
	dìdao 地道 diǎn	typical, authentic	yàngzi 样子 tào	appearance, look
	点 yuè	order	套 chájù	set
	越 bùdébù	more	茶具 qízhōng	tea set
	不得不gǎnjué	have no choice, have to	其中	among
	感觉 bùguò	feel; feelings	gàosu 告诉 Zhù hǎo	tell
	不过	however, but	祝好!	Best wishes.

生词 New words





#### 王玉:

你好!

我和马克、永民已经到了成都。成都有很多好玩的景点, 我们都玩得很开心。昨天晚上我们去了市中心附近的一家饭馆 吃饭,饭馆的名字叫"老成都",听说那里的川菜很地道。我们 点了麻婆豆腐、宫保鸡丁,还有水煮鱼。开始吃的时候觉得味 道很好,但是越吃越辣,最后我不得不喝了一大杯水,才感觉 好一些。不过,马克和永民不怕辣,所有的菜很快就吃光了。

今天下午我们去市场买东西,那里的东西又多又便宜。永 民买了一件唐装,他穿唐装的样子很帅。我看到这套茶具和这 条围巾,很漂亮,我想买其中的一件送给你妈妈。你能告诉我 你妈妈喜欢茶具还是围巾吗?

祝好!

-

阿曼达

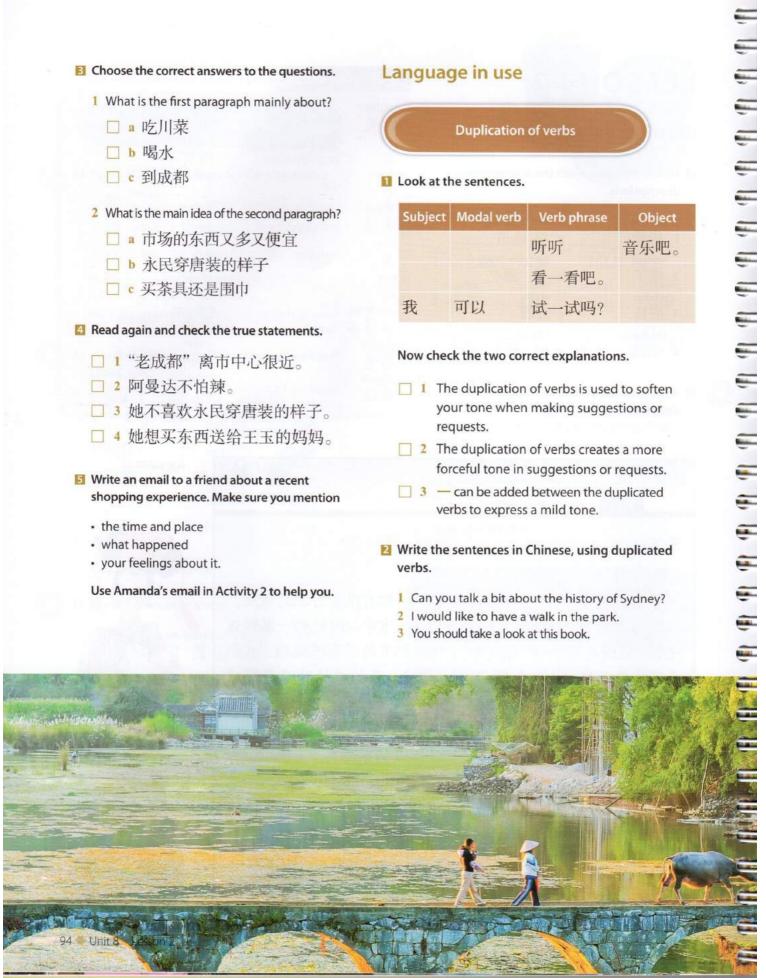




Choose the correct answers to the questions.	Language in use
1 What is the first paragraph mainly about?	
□ a 吃川菜	Duplication of verbs
□ b 喝水	
□ c 到成都	Look at the sentences.
2 What is the main idea of the second paragraph?	Subject   Modal verb   Verb phrase   Object
□ a 市场的东西又多又便宜	听听音乐吧。
□ b 永民穿唐装的样子	看一看吧。
□ c 买茶具还是围巾	我 可以 试一试吗?
Read again and check the true statements.	
□ 1 "老成都"离市中心很近。	Now check the two correct explanations.
□ 2 阿曼达不怕辣。	The duplication of verbs is used to soften
□ 3 她不喜欢永民穿唐装的样子。	your tone when making suggestions or
□ 4 她想买东西送给王玉的妈妈。	requests.
	The duplication of verbs creates a more forceful tone in suggestions as requests.
Write an email to a friend about a recent	forceful tone in suggestions or requests.  3 — can be added between the duplicated
shopping experience. Make sure you mention	verbs to express a mild tone.
the time and place	
<ul><li>what happened</li><li>your feelings about it.</li></ul>	Write the sentences in Chinese, using duplicated verbs.
Use Amanda's email in Activity 2 to help you.	1 Can you talk a bit about the history of Sydney?



2 I would like to have a walk in the park.



'The more... the more...

越……越……

II Look at the sentences.

Subject	越	Verb / Adjective	越	Verb phrase / Adjective phrase
我	越	吃	越	想吃。
马克	越	走	越	快。
她	越	想	越	不开心。
钱	越	多	越	好。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 越······越······ is used to indicate that one thing increases as something else continues or increases.
- 2 越 can be followed by a verb or an adjective.
- 3 Words linked by 越……越…… must be of the same part of speech.
- Write sentences using 越……越…… and the given words.
  - 1 他/长/高
  - 2 我/说/高兴
  - 3 她/跑/热

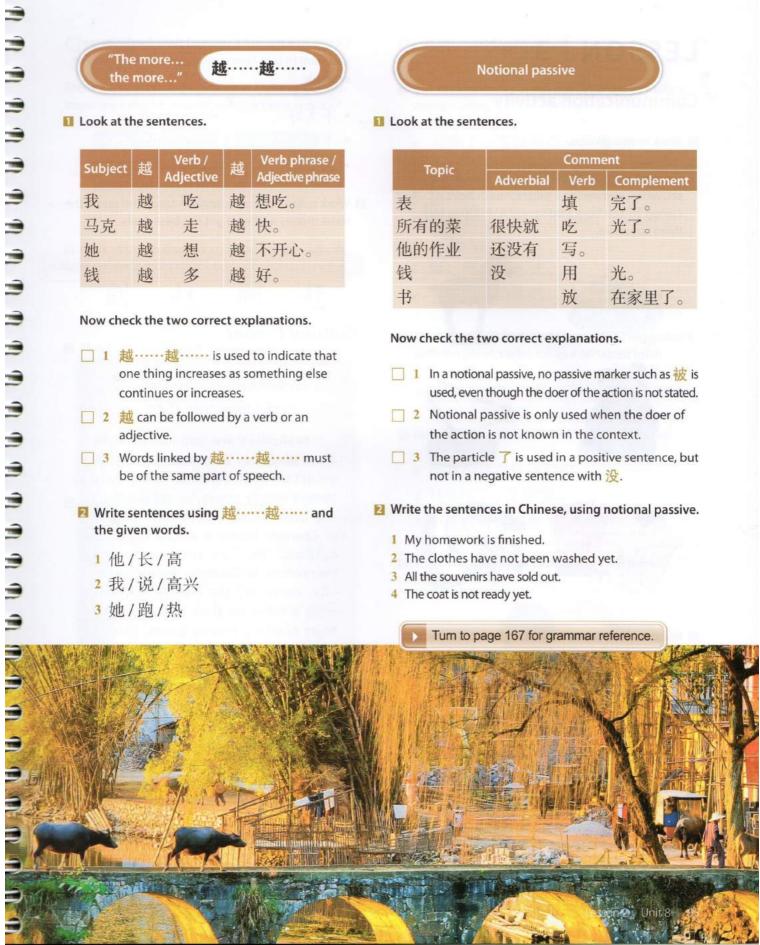
#### Notional passive

Look at the sentences.

Tonic	Comment			
Topic	Adverbial	Verb	Complement	
表		填	完了。	
所有的菜	很快就	吃	光了。	
他的作业	还没有	写。		
钱	没	用	光。	
书		放	在家里了。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- In a notional passive, no passive marker such as 被 is used, even though the doer of the action is not stated.
- Notional passive is only used when the doer of the action is not known in the context.
- ☐ 3 The particle 7 is used in a positive sentence, but not in a negative sentence with 没.
- Write the sentences in Chinese, using notional passive.
  - 1 My homework is finished.
  - 2 The clothes have not been washed yet.
  - 3 All the souvenirs have sold out.
  - 4 The coat is not ready yet.



### **Communication activity**

Work in two groups.

**Group A:** You are souvenir sellers. Look at the souvenirs, and decide a price for each item. **Group B:** You have a budget of RMB200 to buy three souvenirs.













Imagine you are at the market. Group A stand at different "stalls" (desks) around the classroom. Group B walk around the "market".

**Group A:** Offer the souvenirs to customers, and bargain for the best price with them. Give reasons for your price if necessary. For example,

• 质量很好

good quality

• 颜色很漂亮

pretty colour

• 很有中国味道

very Chinese

• 很便宜

very cheap

**Group B:** Bargain for the best price for the items you want to buy. Give reasons for a lower price. For example,

不太好

not very good

• 不够漂亮

not pretty enough

• 太贵了

too expensive

Work with the whole class. Find out who made the most money and who got the best deals.

S.

Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

# Teahouses in Chengdu and Longmen Zhen

Teahouses are popular in many areas of China. Teahouses function as entertainment centres, community centres and as places for get-togethers and even business meetings. The city of Chengdu boasts a unique teahouse culture. You can find teahouses everywhere in Chengdu. People in the city, especially the elderly, not only enjoy drinking tea there, but also spend hours chatting, playing games, reading newspaper, eating snacks, and listening to storytellers. This kind of activity is known as "Longmen Zhen" (龙门阵). The word has its origins in the Tang dynasty, when a general named Xue Rengui (薛 仁贵) invented a battle formation called "Longmen Zhen". The name implies that every teahouse in Chengdu is like a battlefield, bustling with endless activity!

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
走	walk	走、超
IJ	knife	剧、别

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 刻赵刷赶

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 拿到
- a toothbrush
- 2 起床
- b the more... the more...
- 3 越……越……
- c get up
- 4 牙刷
- d get, take to
- El Trace the characters in the boxes.



### Review and practice

- Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.
  - a 太贵了,可以便宜一点儿吗?
  - b太少了。一百块吧。
  - c 这件衣服多少钱?
  - d 再便宜一点吧。九十块, 怎么样?
  - e 一百八。
  - f 那好吧。给你钱。
  - g一百五卖给你吧。
- Work in pairs. Take turns to make three suggestions with the given verbs, using a softened tone.
  - 1 试 2 用 3 看
- B Rewrite the sentences using notional passive.
  - 1 所有的菜都被他们吃光了。
  - 2 马克填完了这张表。
  - 3 小王准备好行李了。
- Write two sentences to describe each picture, using 越……越…….





# Vocabulary extension

Match the words with the objects in the picture.

pídài shǒubiǎo lǐngdài l 皮带 2 手表 3 领带 qiánbāo píxié jìshìběn 4 钱包 5 皮鞋 6 记事本

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about how much you have paid for these items.



# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

包裹	bāoguŏ	-	
1127 127203		n.	parcel, package
表(格)	biǎogé	n.	
不得不			have no choice, have to
	bùguò	conj.	however, but
茶具	chájù	n.	January Company
地道	dìdao	adj.	N. of Laborator
	diăn	V.	order
	dŏng	V.	understand
感觉	gănjué	v./n.	
	gàosu	V.	tell
	gōngjīn	measure word	kilogram
光	guāng	adj.	used up, all gone
纪念品	jìniànpĭn	n.	
	jiā	measure word	(used for families or companies)
讲价	jiǎngjià	v.	
空邮	kōngyóu	v.	air mail
	lăo	adj.	old
	mài	v.	sell
毛	máo	measure word	Chinese currency unit; jiao (coll.)
明信片	míngxìnpiàn	n.	
	pà	v.	be afraid, fear
平邮	píngyóu	V.	ordinary postage, surface mail

普通话	Pŭtōnghuà	n.	
其中	qízhōng	n.	
	suŏyŏu	adj.	all
唐装	tángzhuāng	n.	traditional Chinese clothes
套	tào	n.	set
味道	wèidào	n.	
行李	xíngli	n.	
样子	yàngzi	n.	appearance, look
	yīdìng	adv.	definitely, for sure
一会儿	yīhuìr	n.	
邮寄	yóujì	v.	post, send by post
越	yuè	adv.	more
真丝	zhēnsī	n.	real silk, 100% silk
重量	zhòngliàng	n.	
祝好!	Zhù hảo		Best wishes.
	zuótiān	n.	yesterday
记事本	jishiběn	n.	notebook
领带	lĭngdài	n.	tie
毛笔	máobľ	n.	writing brush
皮带	pídài	n.	belt
皮鞋	pixié	n.	leather shoes
钱包	qiánbão	n.	wallet
手表	shoubiao	n.	watch
玩具	wánjù	n.	toy

#### Review 2

### Vocabulary

- Match the activity with the place where it happens.
  - 1 买票
- a 市场
- 2 讲价
- b饭馆
- 3 登记入住
- c售票处
- 4 点菜
- d 博物馆
- 5 参观文物
- e宾馆
- Complete the phrases with the correct measure words.

  - 1 \_\_\_ 衣柜 5 两 \_\_\_ 米饭

- 2 一 \_\_\_ 被子 6 三 \_\_\_ 汽水
- 3 一\_\_\_ 毛巾 7 三\_\_\_ 筷子
- 4 两 \_\_\_ 门票 8 一 \_\_\_ 唐装
- B Write three sentences to describe where the furniture is.



Write five sentences to describe what you usually do in the morning.

#### Grammar

- Put the words in brackets in the correct places to complete the sentences.
  - 1 你可以被子拿出来吗? (把)
  - 2 我的书小王拿走了。(被)
  - 3 他家的门口挂红灯笼。(着)
  - 4 我的房间有三米,两米。(长/宽)
- Write questions for the answers.
  - 1 A: \_\_\_\_\_ ?
    - B: 古城墙有600多年的历史。
  - 2 A:
    - B: 我奶奶已经80多岁了。
  - 3 A: \_\_\_\_\_\_?
    - B: 从北京到香港坐飞机要三个小时。
  - - B: 因为海外的中国人称他们自己为 唐人。
  - 5 A: \_\_\_\_\_\_?
    - B: 这个兵马俑有两米高。

#### El Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

#### 虽然 越……越…… 所以 够

- 1 他昨天回家了, \_\_\_\_没有参加派对。
- 2 这个宾馆的床\_\_\_\_大,有两米宽。
- 3 马克的中文\_\_\_\_说\_\_\_好。
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 这里的麻婆豆腐很好吃,但是我不舒服,不能吃辣的。

#### Make sentences using the given words.

- 1 桌子/衣柜/旁边
- 2 被子/不够/暖和
- 3 衣服/洗/好
- 4 兵马俑/发现/农民
- 5 冬天/很冷/穿大衣
- 6 因为……所以……
- 7 告示牌/安静/着
- 8 筷子/放/桌子/把
- 9 公园 / 走一走
- 10 是……的
- 11 被/这本书/借
- 12 体育场/长/宽

# **Write a sentence to describe each picture using 把 sentences.**



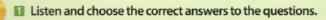






Now rewrite your sentences using 被.

# Integrated skills



- 1 他什么时候去吃川菜了?
  - a今天
- b昨天
- 2 她买了什么?
  - a一条围巾
- b一套茶具
- 3 他觉得麻婆豆腐的味道怎么样?

  - a 太辣了 b 很好吃
- 4 她点了什么菜?
  - a炒饭

The near annear annear annear annear

- b果汁
- 5 中文故事书在哪里?

  - a 桌子的旁边 b 书柜的最上面
- 6 宾馆的服务怎么样?
  - a 很舒服
- b 不够好
- 7 房子的门口挂着什么?
  - a告示牌
- b "不得进入"
- 8 平邮比空邮慢多少?
  - a 两天
- b五天



- 2 Work in pairs. Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.
  - a 很好玩。成都有很多好玩的景点。
  - b 你最喜欢哪个景点?
  - c 很好。我们已经去过西安, 现在我们在 成都。
  - d 对了, 你们吃川菜了吗?
  - e 西安怎么样?
  - f 很不错。到了西安, 才感觉到这里是真 正的历史古城。
  - g 你们参观了什么景点?
  - h 我最喜欢兵马俑。那些兵马俑看起来像 真的一样!
  - i 成都好玩吗?
  - 」吃过了。川菜又麻又辣,很好吃,但是 我怕辣,不能吃太多。
  - k 阿曼达, 你们的旅游怎么样?
  - 1 我们参观了兵马俑、古城墙、钟楼和陕 西历史博物馆。

1.00	the state of the s	
The correct	t order is	

Write five sentences to describe the locations of the rooms in the flat, using 有/是, 旁边 and 对面.



4 Work in pairs. Write a conversation of six sentences for the people in each picture.



Now act out the conversations.

# **Enjoy Chinese**

Guess what these ancient Chinese characters resemble.

- 1
- a草
- 2 7
- b 木
- 3 (
- c 又
- 4 44
- d □
- H
- e 大
- 6 X
- f耳

Now match the ancient characters with the modern ones.

UNIT 9

The scenery here is amazing!

# Vocabulary and listening



Look at the picture below and check the things that you can find in it.

hú 湖	lántiār
	蓝天
shān	shitou
Щ	石头
niǎo	shùmù
鸟	树木

Now listen and say the words.



Mark, Yeong-min and Amanda are at Jiuzhaigou Valley. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

- 1 为什么马克说"书店应该退钱!"?
- 2 马克喜欢这个地方吗? 永民呢?

马克: 今天天气真好。

永民: 这里的风景美极了!

阿曼达: 是啊。这个湖特别漂亮。

永民:看,湖水刚才是蓝色的,现在

变成了绿色。

马克: 旅游书上说这个湖叫"五彩池",应该有五种颜色啊。我现在只看到蓝色和绿色两种。

书店应该退钱!

阿曼达: 哈哈, 真好笑。那边的湖水有

很多种颜色,看到了吗?

马克: 看到了! 蓝天、白云、五彩的

湖水和绿色的山, 真美。

阿曼达: 像一幅画。



马克: 我很喜欢这种自然风景。这里的山特别美,和澳大利亚的山完全不一样。

永民: 和韩国的山也不一样,很特别。我第一次看到这种山水。

阿曼达: 我也喜欢这里,空气又好,又安静。听到了吗? 鸟儿在唱歌。

马克: 哈哈,没错。在城市里听不到。

永民:看,这是我拍的照片。你们觉

得怎么样?

阿曼达: 不错。给我们照张相吧。

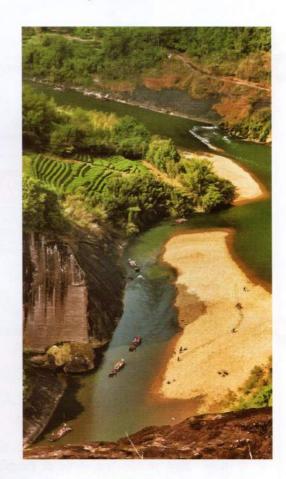
永民: 没问题。一二三, 笑一笑。

#### 生词 New words

fēngjǐng		hăoxiào	
风景	scenery	好笑	funny
měi jí le 美极了	amazing	shān 山	mountain, hill
měi 美	beautiful	túhuà 图画	picture
hú (pō) 湖(泊)	lake	zirán 自然	nature
tèbié 特别	especially, particularly	wánquán 完全	completely;
gāngcái 刚才	just now, a moment	shānshuǐ 山水	scenery
	ago	niăo	
biànchéng 变成	change into	鸟 méicuò	bird
lǚyóu 旅游	tour; tourism	没错	right
căi	colour	cuò 错	wrong
彩 chí	pond, pool	zhàoxiàng 照相	take a photo
池 zhǒng		xiào 笑	smile, laugh
种	kind, type	大	
tuiqián 退钱	refund		



- Listen again and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 "五彩池" 的湖水只有蓝和绿两种颜色。
  - □ 2 阿曼达不喜欢听到鸟叫。
  - □ 3 永民拍的照片很漂亮。
  - □ 4 永民让阿曼达给他拍照。
- Work in pairs. Look carefully at the picture. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many details as possible.



Now close your book. Describe the picture to your partner from memory and see who gets the most correct details.

# Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "j" and "z"

2-20	Check the correct initials for the character		
	1 在	□ј	z

5 最 □ j □ z

Now listen and repeat.



1 风<u>景</u> □ j □ z 2 美<u>极</u>了 □ j □ z 3 房<u>子</u> □ j □ z

4 看<u>见</u> □ j □ z 5 安<u>静</u> □ j □ z

6 几个 □ j □

Now listen and repeat.

# Read the sentences aloud.

Zhèlǐ de fēngjǐng měi jí le 1 这里的 风景 美极了!

Zhè tào fángzi yǒu jǐ gè fángjiān

2 这套房子有几个房间? Wǒ zuótiān zǒulù qù xuéxiào

3 我昨天走路去学校。

Nàge jìzhě zǒu jìn le zuŏbian de fángjiān

4 那个记者走进了左边的房间。 Chūnjié shì Hànzúrén zuì zhòngyào de jiérì

5 春节是汉族人最 重要 的节日。

Now listen and repeat.



223 4 1

4 Listen and say the words.

zìrán fēngjing túhuà shānshuĭ 1 自然 风景 冬画 山水 tèbié yīnggāi wánguán gāngcái 2 特别 应该 完全 刚才 zhàoxiàng ānjìng méicuò biànchéng 照相 没错 安静 变成

Complete the table with information about a beautiful place you have visited.

在哪里	
山水的特点	
我觉得	

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the places you have chosen.

# 2-24

#### CHINESE TO GO

Questions to ask a tour guide

Xíngchéng shì shénme 行程 是 什么?

Háiyǒu duō yuǎn 还有多远?

Zài zhèlǐ dāi duō jiǔ 在这里呆 多 久?

Kěyǐ zìyóu huódòng ma 可以自由 活动 吗?

Jǐ diǎn Zài nǎr jíhé 几点/在哪儿集合?

Yǒu shénme tèchǎn 有 什么 特产?

What's the itinerary?

How far away is it?

How long are we going to stay here?

Can I look around by myself?

What time/Where do we meet up?

What special local products are there?

# Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Check the things you would expect to find at a nature reserve.

gāoshān	sēnlín
□ 高山	□ 森林
pùbù	shùmù
□ 瀑布	□ 树木
héliú	lántiān
□ 河流	□ 蓝天
húpō	báiyún
□ 湖泊	□ 白云



Read the flyer about the Wolong Reserves and Jiuzhaigou Valley.

#### 生词 New words

bǎohùqū 保护区	nature reserve	pùbù 瀑布	waterfall
wèiyú 位于	be located in	sēnlín 森林	forest
zhàn 占	occupy, make up	fēicháng 非常	very, extremely
zŏngshù	total	rénjiān	(human)
总数 bǎifēnzhī	number	人间	world, the earth
百分之	percent	xiānjìng	paradise
xiāng 乡	hometown,	仙境 qīngchè	
chú le	countryside	清澈	clear
除了····· yǐwài	except for, besides	dǐ 底 shùmù	bottom
以外		树木	trees
bǎohù 保护	protect; protection	dàoyìng	reflect,
zhíwů		倒映	mirror
植物	plant	jīchǎng 机场	airport

# 卧龙保护区





卧龙保护区位于成都的西北,离成都大约一百三十公里。保护区里有一百多只大熊猫,占全国总数的百分之十,所以被称为"熊猫之乡"。

除了大熊猫以外,保护区里还有很多其他受国家保护的动物和植物。

交通 旅游车 (成都一卧龙) 三小时

# 九寨沟





九寨沟离成都四百多公里。这里的 雪山、瀑布、湖泊和森林非常漂亮,被称 为"人间仙境"。

九寨沟里有一百多个大大小小的湖泊。其中的五彩池清澈见底,蓝天、白云和树木倒映在水中,五颜六色,美极了。 九寨沟里还有很多瀑布,其中最大的瀑布宽二百米,高四十多米。

交通 飞机(成都—九黄机场)45分钟 旅游车(成都—九寨沟)10小时

_
=
=
_
=
=
=
=
=
=
=
E
E
E
E
=
=
=
-
藏图
E

Check the true statements.	Expressing result of an action with  Look at the sentences.			
□ 1 保护区里的动植物受国家保护。 □ 2 从成都到卧龙坐旅游车要三个小时。 □ 3 九寨沟比较远,但是可以坐飞机去。				
□ 4 九寨沟里有一百多个瀑布。				
Read the flyer again and complete the table.	Subject Adverbial Verb 到 Object			
卧龙保护区 九寨沟	我 第一次 看 到 这种山水。			
	你 找 到 书了吗?			
在哪里	马克 买 (不)到 火车票。			
被称为	Now check the two correct explanations.			
交通 交通	☐ 1 到 is used after a verb to express the result			
Now work in pairs. Discuss and decide which place you would like to visit together.	A noun or noun phrase serving as the object must always be used after 到 to say what or who was involved in the action.			
我想去旅游,因为	☐ 3 不 is used before the verb to express a negative result.			
5 Design a travel flyer for a place you know well. Include where it is, what there is to see, how to get there and why it is special.	2 Complete the sentences, using 到 and the given words.  1			
108 Unit 9' Lesson 2				

Expressing percentages using

百分之……

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Adjective phrase	Percentage
这里的 熊猫	占	全国总数的	百分之 十。
中文 作业	占	(所有作业的)	百分之 三十。
他的 朋友	占	(派对人数的)	百分之 五十。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- A percentage is expressed by adding the character for a number after 百分之.
- ☐ 2 The verb 占 is used before an adjective phrase to explain what it is a proportion of.
- An adjective phrase must be used in a sentence expressing a percentage.
- 2 Write the sentences, using 百分之…… and the given words.
  - 女学生/学校人数/百分之五十 玩游戏/你的时间/百分之三十 当地人/工作人员/百分之九十

除了……以外,还……

Look at the sentences.

除了 以外	Subject	还	Verb	Object
除了大熊猫以外,	这里	还	有	很多受国家保护 的动物和植物。
除了报纸以外,	永民	还	买了	一些故事书。
除了购物以外,	她	还	喜欢	拍照。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 除了·····以外 means "in addition to" or "besides" when it is used together with 还.
- □ 2 除了·····以外 means "except" or "apart from" when it is used together with 还.
- □ 3 The word after 除了 must express things of the same nature as the topic of the main clause after 还.

Complete the sentences.

除了\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,我还喜欢\_\_\_\_\_\_。 除了\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,我每天还要\_\_\_\_\_\_。 除了\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,我们还一起\_\_\_\_\_\_。

Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

### Communication activity

- Work in groups. You are the activity coordinators for a group of Chinese students visiting your school. You are planning a day trip for them to a place of natural beauty.
  - Choose a destination and write a plan. Describe the natural features and why it is so beautiful.
  - Prepare a presentation about your planned trip.
- Give your presentation to the class.

Now vote for the best plan.

Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Corner**

# Famous mountains in China

China has many scenic mountain regions, but some peaks are better known than others, and are among the most visited sites in the country.

There are two sets of holy mountains in China: one associated with Taoism and one with Buddhism. The Four Sacred Mountains of Buddhism (四大佛教名山) are Wutai Shan 五台山, Emei Shan 峨嵋山, Jiuhua Shan 九华山 and Putuo Shan 普陀山. These mountains are home to famous Buddhist monasteries and are major sites of pilgrimage.

Each of the Taoist "Five Great Mountains" (五岳) is associated with one of the traditional Chinese cardinal directions: Tai Shan 泰山 with the east, Hua Shan 华山 with the west, Heng Shan 衡山 in Hunan with the south, Heng Shan 恒山 in Shanxi with the north and 嵩山 Song Shan with the centre. Tai Shan is therefore also known as 东岳 ("east great mountain"), Song Shan as 中岳 ("central great mountain") and so on.

Huangshan 黄山 in Anhui Province is noted for its natural beauty rather than religious significance, and ever since the Qin dynasty it has been considered one of the most beautiful locations in China. A well-known saying goes 五岳归来不看山,黄山归来不看岳—"When you come back from the Five Great Mountains, you won't want to look at ordinary mountains any more. When you return from Huangshan, you won't want to see the Five Great Mountains."

#### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
寸	inch	寺、时
[] (left)	mound	院、阳

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 对导阿降

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1除了
- a tour guide
- 2 下降
- b sorry
- 3 导游
- c except
- 4 对不起
- d decrease
- El Trace the characters in the boxes.

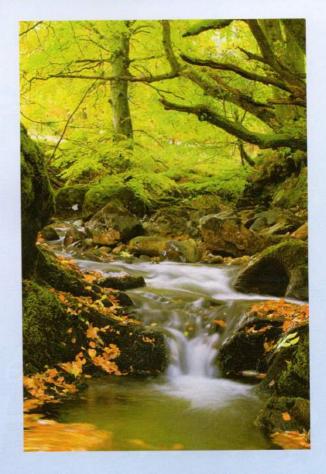


#### Review and practice

Circle the odd word out.

1 瀑布	森林	风景	雪山
2 保护	自然	变成	倒映
3 完全	特别	非常	植物
4 好笑	美极了	不错	位于

Write three sentences to describe the picture.



- B Write three sentences that you might say about the picture above, using 看到, 想到 and 找到.
- Write three sentences about your school or country using 百分之…….
- Write three sentences about yourself using 除了·····以外,还······.

# Vocabulary extension

Match the words with things in the picture.

a	hǎitān 海滩	anyá 法崖
C	dǎo 点	làng

Now work in pairs. Talk about a place you know that have the above things/features.



# Vocabulary review

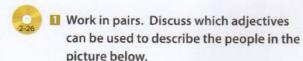
Fill in the blanks.

百分之	băifēnzhī	n.	percent
保护	bǎohù	v./n.	
保护区	bǎohùqū	n.	nature reserve
	biànchéng	V.	change into
彩	căi	n.	colour
池	chí	n.	
除了 以外	· chúle yĭwài	prep.	except for, besides
	cuò	adj.	wrong
倒映	dàoyìng	V.	reflect, mirror
底	dĭ	n.	bottom
	fēicháng	adv.	very, extremely
风景	fēngjĭng	n.	scenery
	gāngcái	n.	just now, a moment ago
好笑	hǎoxiào	adj.	
湖(泊)	húpō	n.	lake
	jīchăng	n.	airport
旅游	lůyóu	V.	4-1-1-1
没错	méicuò		
	měi	adj.	beautiful
美极了	měi jí le		amazing
	niăo	n.	bird
瀑布	pùbù	n.	
清澈	qīngchè	adj.	clear
人间	rénjiān	n.	(human) world, the earth

sēnlín	n.	forest
shān	n.	mountain, hill
shānshuĭ	n.	
shùmù	n.	
tèbié	adv.	especially, particularly
túhuà	n.	picture
tuìqián	v.	
wánquán	adv./adj.	completely; entire
wèiyú	v.	
xiānjìng	n.	paradise
xiāng	n.	hometown, countryside
xiào	v.	
zhàn	v.	occupy, make up
zhàoxiàng	v.	take a photo
zhíwù	n.	
zhŏng	measure word	kind, type
zìrán	n.	nature
zŏngshù		
dăo	n.	island
hăilàng	n.	wave
hăitān	n.	beach
héliú	n.	river
shítou	n.	stone
xuányá	n.	cliff
	shān shānshuǐ shùmù tèbié túhuà tuìqián wánquán wèiyú xiānjìng xiāng xiào zhàn zhàoxiàng zhíwù zhŏng zìrán zŏngshù dăo hăilàng hăitān héliú shítou	shān n. shānshuǐ n. shùmù n. tèbié adv. túhuà n. tuìqián v. wánquán adv./adj. wèiyú v. xiānjìng n. xiāng n. xiào v. zhàn v. zhàn v. zhòng measure word zìrán n. zŏngshù dǎo n. hǎilàng n. hǎitān n. héliú n. shítou n.



### Vocabulary and listening



qèzi zhōngděng gāo 1 个子: 高 中等 shēncái pàng miáotiao shòu 2 身材: 胖 痩 苗条

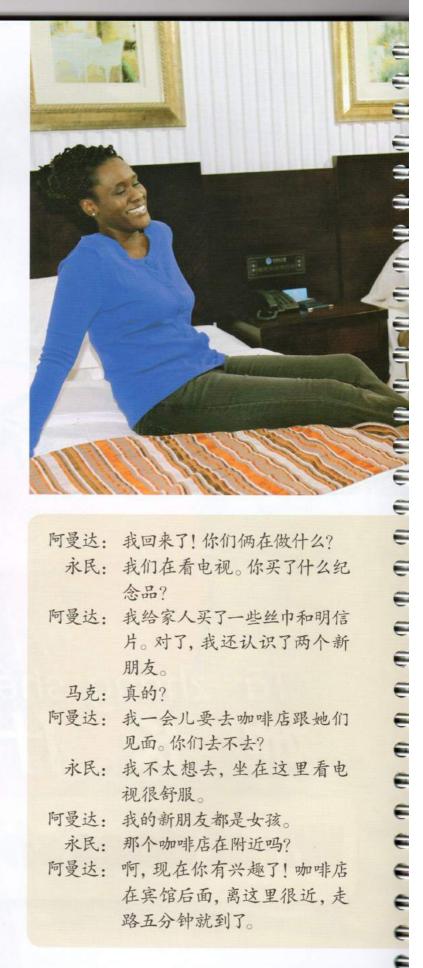
tóufa cháng duăn 3 头发: 长

> hēisè hèsè jīnsè 黑色 褐色 金色



Now listen and say the words.

- 2 At the hotel, Amanda talks about some new friends she has made. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达一会儿要做什么?
  - 2 为什么马克问她的新朋友长 什么样子?
  - 3 马克和永民会一起去酒吧吗?



阿曼达: 我回来了! 你们俩在做什么?

永民: 我们在看电视。你买了什么纪

念品?

阿曼达: 我给家人买了一些丝巾和明信

片。对了, 我还认识了两个新

朋友。

马克: 真的?

阿曼达: 我一会儿要去咖啡店跟她们

见面。你们去不去?

永民: 我不太想去, 坐在这里看电

视很舒服。

阿曼达: 我的新朋友都是女孩。

永民: 那个咖啡店在附近吗?

啊, 现在你有兴趣了! 咖啡店 阿曼达:

在宾馆后面, 离这里很近, 走

路五分钟就到了。



#### 生词 New words

liǎ 俩	two (coll.)	jīnsè 金色	golden, blond(e)
diànshì	TV	tóufa	hair
电视 sījīn		头发 yǎnjing	
丝巾 duì le	silk scarf	眼睛 zhōngděng	eye
对了	by the way, that's right	中等	medium
kāfēi 咖啡	coffee	miáotiao 苗条	slim, slender
nǔhái 女孩	girl	lìng 另	other,
xìngqù	interest	duăn	short
兴趣 zhǎng	grow,	短 ǎi	(length)
长 Déguó	develop	矮 pàng	(height)
德国	Germany	胖	plump, fat
liúxuéshēng 留学生	overseas student	zhòngyào 重要	important

马克: 你的新朋友长什么样子?

阿曼达:一个叫丽莎,是德国留学

生。她有金色的长头发,蓝 色的眼睛,中等个子,很苗 条。另一个叫孙玉香,是上 海人。她的头发比较短,个 子不高不矮,她比丽莎胖一

点儿。

马克: 听起来很有趣, 但是你还

没说最重要的。

阿曼达: 什么是最重要的?

永民: 马克最想知道她们漂亮不

漂亮,还有她们有没有男朋

友!

阿曼达: 我要走了。如果你们想知道,

就跟我来吧。

#### Listen again and check the true statements.

- □ 1丽莎的个子不高也不矮。
- □ 2 丽莎比玉香瘦一点儿。
- □ 3玉香的头发和丽莎的一样长。
- □ 4 永民想知道她们有没有男朋友。

#### Work in pairs.

Student A: Choose a person in the pictures on page 114 or 115 and answer Student B's questions.

Student B: Ask questions about the person's appearance and guess who it is.

Now change roles.

#### Pronunciation and speaking

#### The neutral tone



#### Look at the tone marks. How do they change?

xiǎnqxianq 想想

kànkan 4 看看

shìshi 试试

shénme 5 什么

shuōshuo 说说

năli 6 哪里

Now listen and repeat.



#### Listen and check the pinyin with the tones you hear.

1漂亮 piàoliàng

piàoliana

2 朋友 péngyŏu

péngyou

3 眼睛 yănjing

yǎnjing

4 样子 yàngzĭ yàngzi

5 头发 tóufà tóufa

Now listen again and repeat.



#### Say the sentences aloud.

Nǐ de péngyou zhẳng shénme yàngzi

1 你的 朋友 长 什么 样子?

Tā hěn piàoliang cháng tóufa

- 2 她 很 漂亮 , 长 头发, 高 个子。 Wǒ kěyǐ shìshi zhè jiàn yīfu ma
- 3 我可以试试这件衣服吗? Nǐ shuōshuo wǒ yīnggāi mǎi shénme
- 4 你 说说 我 应该 买 什么? Nǐ xiảngxiang bả dōngxi fàng zài năli le
- 5 你 想想 把东西放在哪里了。

Now listen and repeat.





#### Listen and say the words.

tóufa yănjing yàngzi qèzi 1 样子 个子 头发 眼睛 ăi miáotiao shòu pàng 矮 2 苗条 痼 胖 jīnsè zhōngděng cháng duăn 3 金色 中等 长 短

Draw a picture of what you looked like when you were younger.

Now work in pairs. Describe how your partner's appearance has changed.



#### CHINESE TO GO

Expressions to describe

Rén bùkě mào xiàng 人不可貌 相。

Don't judge people by their appearance.

Tā zhẳng de hěn xiàng tā bàba 他长得很像他爸爸。 He looks like his father.

Nǐ liả yīdiảnr yẻ bù xiàng 你俩一点儿也不像。 You two don't look like each other at all.

Tā hảo shuài gão kẻ ài 他好帅/高/可爱! He is very handsome/tall/cute!

#### Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Describe the man's appearance, what he is wearing and the size of his clothes. Use the words below.

qiúyī yùndòngkù 运动裤 球衣 qiúxié wàzi 袜子 球鞋

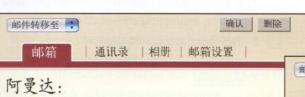
xiǎohào zhōnghào 中号 小号 dàhào jiādàhào 大号 加大号



#### 生词

érqiě 而且	and, but also	jiǔ 久	long (time)
tiāoxuǎn		zuìjìn	
挑选 gèng	choose	最近 zhōnghào	recently
更	more, even more	十万	medium size
qiúyī 球衣	jersey, kit for ball games	Bāxī 巴西	Brazil
biǎodì 表弟	cousin (younger male)	shēncái 身材	figure, stature
shòu	thin, skinny	pífū	
瘦 wèntí		皮肤 kuàilè	skin
问题	question, problem	快乐	happy
yúkuài 愉快	happy, pleasant		

Read Wang Yu's emails to Amanda and her cousin in Chengdu.



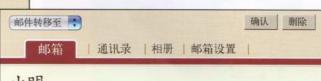
知道你们已经到了成都,而且玩 得很开心, 我很高兴。:-) 我很想看看 永民穿唐装的样子,一定很帅。:-P你 挑选的两件东西都很漂亮, 我觉得我 妈妈可能更喜欢茶具。

另外, 谢谢你帮我带球衣给我 表弟。明天晚上他会去你住的宾馆 拿球衣。我表弟叫王明,十七岁,个子 很高,比较瘦,短头发,戴眼镜。他 的手机号码是16521659870。

> 如果你有问题,可以给我打电话。 祝旅行愉快!:-)

> > 王玉

步详



小明:

好久不见, 你最近好吗? 你的生日就 要到了, 我让朋友从英国带回来一套球衣 给你,是你最喜欢的那个球队的。球衣有 蓝白两种颜色, 我想你应该穿中号的, 希望 你喜欢。\*^o^\*

我的朋友阿曼达去成都玩,我让她 把球衣带给你。阿曼达是巴西人,个子不 高,中等身材,黑皮肤,长头发。她住在成 都宾馆, 你可以明天晚上去宾馆找她, 她 的电话号码是16912764805。

祝生日快乐! ^-^

王玉

**鬼母** 

- El Check the true statements.
  - □ 1 王玉觉得永民穿唐装不好看。
  - □ 2 王玉的表弟会去宾馆找阿曼达。
  - □ 3 王玉让阿曼达从美国带球衣给表弟。
  - □ 4 阿曼达没有见过王玉的表弟。
- Write four sentences, comparing the appearances of Amanda and of Wang Yu's cousin.
- Write a short description of what your best friend looks like.

Now work in pairs. Listen to your partner's description and draw a picture of their friend.



#### Language in use

Serial verb constructions

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate			
Jubject	Verb phrase 1	Verb phrase 2		
我	去咖啡店	跟她们见面。		
我	坐在这里	看电视。		
我	买了一件球衣	送给你。		
你	去宾馆	找她。		
他们	坐火车	去成都。		

Now check the two correct explanations.

- A predicate can contain more than one verb phrase, expressing consecutive actions.
- The order of the verb phrases can be switched around without affecting the meaning.
- The verb phrases are related in manner or purpose.
- Join the two sentences together, using serial verb constructions.
  - 1 我回家。/我吃晚饭。
  - 2 我晚上去学校。/我上中文课。
  - 3 我坐飞机。/我去听音乐会。
  - 4 我每天早上到体育场。/ 我每天早上跑步。

#### Affirmative-negative questions

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
Subject	Adjective/Verb	Object	
你们	去不去?		
Will you go or	not?		
她们	漂亮不漂亮?		
Are they prett	y or not?		
这件衣服	贵不贵?		
Is this clothing	expensive or not?		
你	买没买	那条裙子?	
Have you bought that skirt?			
她	看没看	电影?	
Has she seen the movie?			

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Affirmative-negative questions are used to get a straight yes or no answer.
- These questions always contain a verb or an adjective and their negative form.
- ☐ 3 Affirmative-negative questions must contain the negative adverb 不.
- Rewrite the sentences using affirmative-negative questions.
  - 1 你明天去学校吗?
  - 安娜买了那件大衣吗?
  - 3 这个菜好吃吗?
    - 你喜欢打网球吗?

Expressing immediate actions with

(就) 要……了

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Adverb	Predicate
我	(就)要	走了。
你的生日	(就)要	到了。
我们	(就)要	去上海了。
她	(就)要	二十一岁了。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 (就) 要······ 了 is used to express an action or event that is going to happen soon.
- 2 is used at the end of the sentence to indicate that something has happened.
- □ 3 就 can be left out, whereas 要 must be used.
- Write the sentences in Chinese.
  - 1 Will you go to Shanghai soon?
  - 2 I'm going to the hospital tomorrow.
  - 3 My mother is turning 60.
  - 4 We're about to get off the train.
  - 5 The summer vacation is coming.

Turn to page 169 for grammar reference

## Communication activity

Choose a student from the class and write five sentences to describe their appearance. For example,

她是女的。 她个子不高。 她的头发是红色的。 她比我瘦。 她和我一样漂亮。

Work in groups. Take turns to say the descriptions to the group one sentence at a time. Don't say the name of the student you are describing.

Other students in the group guess who is being described. The winner is the person who makes the most correct guesses.

Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

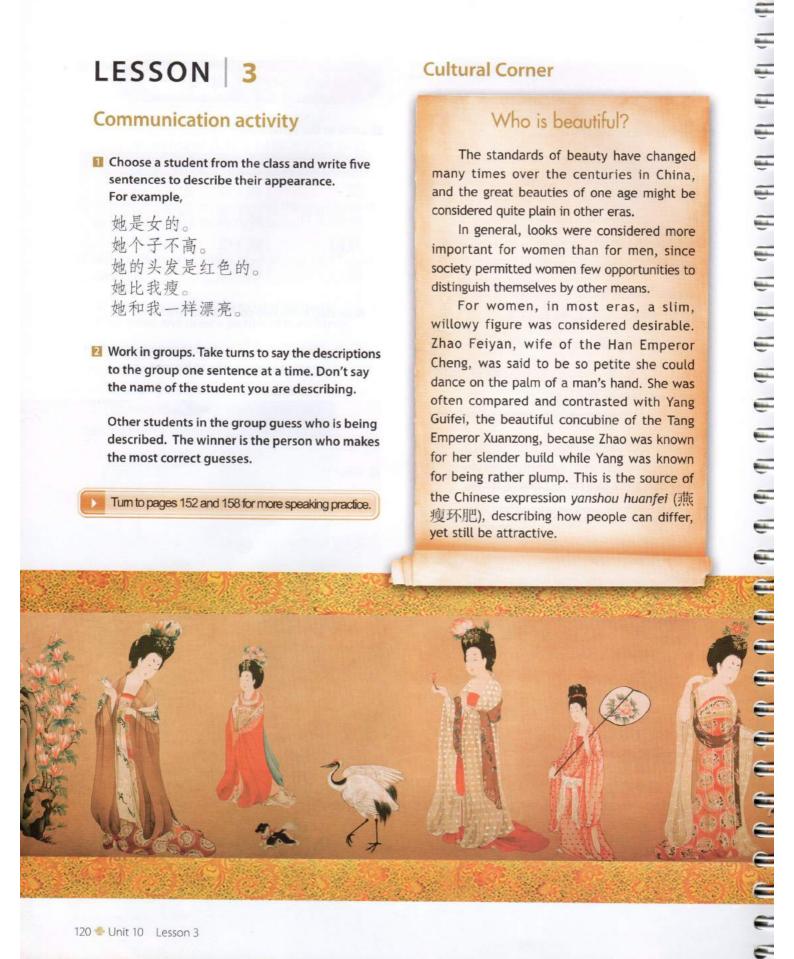
#### **Cultural Corner**

#### Who is beautiful?

The standards of beauty have changed many times over the centuries in China, and the great beauties of one age might be considered quite plain in other eras.

In general, looks were considered more important for women than for men, since society permitted women few opportunities to distinguish themselves by other means.

For women, in most eras, a slim, willowy figure was considered desirable. Zhao Feiyan, wife of the Han Emperor Cheng, was said to be so petite she could dance on the palm of a man's hand. She was often compared and contrasted with Yang Guifei, the beautiful concubine of the Tang Emperor Xuanzong, because Zhao was known for her slender build while Yang was known for being rather plump. This is the source of the Chinese expression yanshou huanfei (范 瘦环肥), describing how people can differ, yet still be attractive.



### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
目	eye	看、睡
子	child	孙、好

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 孩省睛学

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 女孩
- a watch TV
- 2 眼睛
- b girl
- 3 看电视

- c overseas student
- 4 留学生
- d eye
- Trace the characters in the boxes.









#### Review and practice

- Write sentences with the given phrases, using serial verb constructions.
  - 1 去英国/看足球比赛
  - 2 坐地铁/上班
  - 3 到市中心/找房子
  - 4 买东西/送给朋友
  - 5 到朋友家/庆祝生日
- Work in pairs. Ask and answer three affirmative-negative questions about each other.
- Write five sentences to describe the appearance of the people in the picture, including their age, height, build and hair.



Work in pairs. Talk about three things that are going to happen soon, using (就)要.



### Vocabulary extension

Match the words with the facial features of the man in the picture.

liǎn a 脸

bízi b 鼻子 zuǐ c 嘴

ěrduo d 耳朵 méimao 眉毛

húzi f 胡子

Now work in pairs. Describe the man's appearance using these words. Discuss whether you think he is good-looking and explain why.

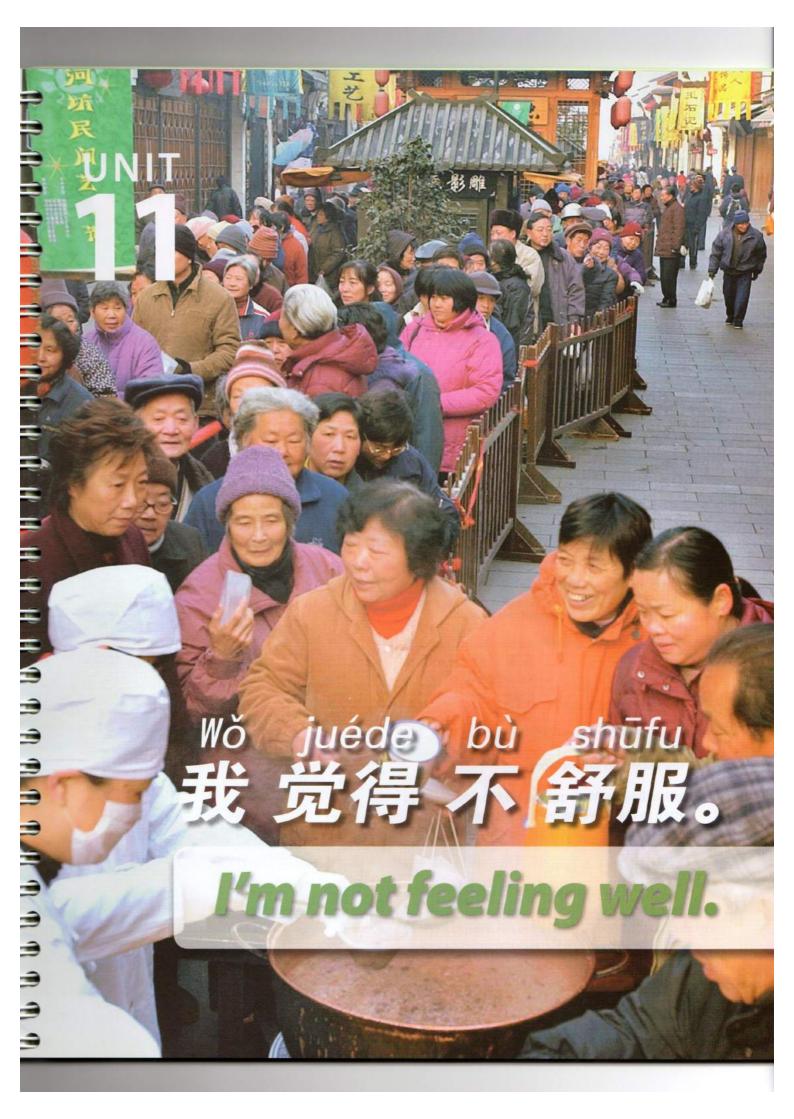


### Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

矮	ăi	adj.	short (height)
巴西	Bāxī	n.	Brazil
	biǎodì	n.	cousin (younger male )
德国	Déguó	n.	
	diànshì	n.	TV
短	duăn	adj.	
	duì le		by the way, that's right
而且	érqiě	conj.	and, but also
更	gèng	adv.	more, even more
金色	jīnsè	n.	golden, blond(e)
久	jiŭ	adj.	long (time)
	kāfēi	n.	coffee
	kuàilè	adj.	happy
俩	liǎ	num.	two (coll.)
另	lìng	pron.	other, another
	liúxuéshēng	n.	overseas student
苗条	miáotiao	adj.	
	nŭhái	n.	girl
胖	pàng	adj.	
皮肤	pífū	n.	skin
球衣	qiúyī	n.	jersey, kit for ball games
让	ràng	V.	let, allow
	shēncái	n.	figure, stature

瘦	shòu	adj.	N
丝巾	sījīn	n.	silk scarf
挑选	tiāoxuǎn	v.	
8	tóufa	n.	hair
	wèntí	n.	question, problem
兴趣	xìngqù	n.	
眼睛	yănjing	n.	eye
愉快	yúkuài	adj.	happy, pleasant
长	zhǎng	V.	
中等	zhōngděng	adj.	medium
	zhōnghào		medium size
重要	zhòngyào	adj.	
最近	zuìjìn	n.	
鼻子	bízi	n.	nose
耳朵	ěrduo	n.	ear
褐色	hèsè	n.	brown
胡子	húzi	n.	moustache
加大号	jiādàhào	n.	extra large size
脸	liăn	n.	face
眉毛	méimao	n.	eyebrow
球鞋	qiúxié	n.	sports shoes
袜子	wàzi	n.	socks
mitte	The second secon		Part of the second seco



### Vocabulary and listening



Match the medicine labels with the meanings.

měi rì sān cì 每日三次

měi cì liăng piàn 每次两片

fàn hòu fúyòng 3 饭后服用

yınqı shuiyi 引起睡意

a cause drowsiness

c take after meals

b three times a day

d two tablets each time

Now listen and say the phrases.



Work in pairs. Check the symptoms of a cold.

tóutòng

□ 头痛

késou □ 咳嗽

fāshāo

hóulóng tòng

□ 发烧

□ 喉咙 痛

bísè □ 鼻寒

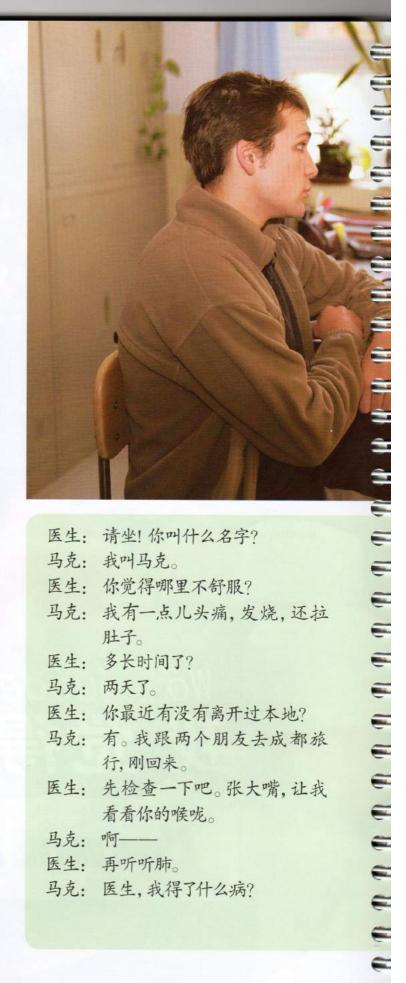
lādùzi □ 拉肚子

Now listen and say the words.



Back in Beijing, Mark goes to see the doctor. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

- 1 马克得了什么病?
- 2 马克为什么病了?
- 3 马克的病应该怎么治?



医生: 请坐! 你叫什么名字?

马克: 我叫马克。

医生: 你觉得哪里不舒服?

马克: 我有一点儿头痛,发烧,还拉

肚子。

医生: 多长时间了?

马克: 两天了。

医生: 你最近有没有离开过本地?

马克: 有。我跟两个朋友去成都旅

行,刚回来。

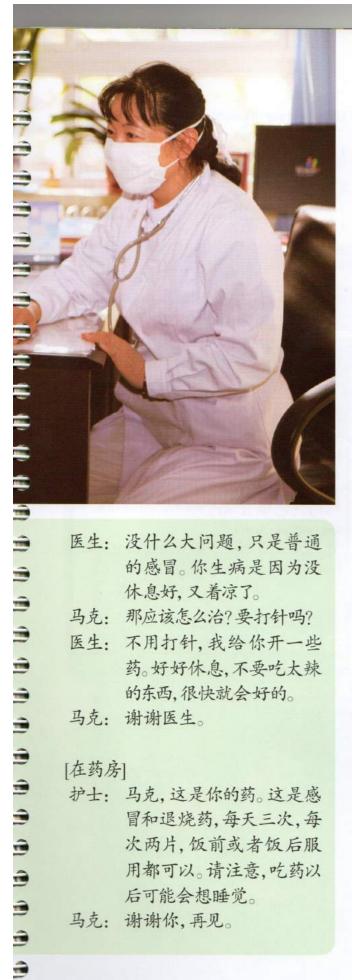
医生: 先检查一下吧。张大嘴,让我

看看你的喉咙。

马克: 啊——

医生: 再听听肺。

马克: 医生, 我得了什么病?



医生: 没什么大问题, 只是普通 的感冒。你生病是因为没 休息好,又着凉了。

马克: 那应该怎么治?要打针吗?

医生: 不用打针, 我给你开一些

药。好好休息,不要吃太辣 的东西,很快就会好的。

马克· 谢谢医生。

# [在药房]

护士: 马克,这是你的药。这是感 冒和退烧药,每天三次,每 次两片,饭前或者饭后服 用都可以。请注意, 吃药以 后可能会想睡觉。

马克: 谢谢你, 再见。

#### 生词 New words

tóutòng shēngbìng headache get sick 头痛 生病 fāshāo xiūxi fever; have rest 发烧 休息 a fever lādùzi zháoliána suffer from catch a cold 拉肚子 着凉 diarrhoea běndì zhì local area, treat 本地 治 place (disease) jiǎnchá dăzhēn check up, have/give 检查 打针 examine an injection zuĭ yào mouth medicine 嘴 药 hóulóng hùshi throat nurse 喉咙 护士 tuìshāo bring down ah 啊 退烧 a fever fèi piàn lung tablet 片 肺 débìng fúyòng acquire/get take 得病 服用 disease (medicine) pǔtōng zhùyì ordinary, note, pay 普通 注意 common attention to gănmào cold 感冒

	_	_		
_				
	~	•		ı
	v			
-	0	6		ı
-	-	40	w	

- Listen again and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 马克病了两天了。
  - □ 2 医生先听肺, 然后检查喉咙。
  - □ 3 马克的药只能饭后服用。
  - □ 4 感冒药可能会让人想睡觉。
- Complete the sentences.
  - 1 马克有一点 \_\_\_\_\_, 还 \_\_\_\_。
  - 2 医生叫马克好好 \_\_\_\_\_, 不要 \_\_\_\_。
  - 3 马克的药每天要吃 \_\_\_\_\_ 次。
- Mork in pairs. Act out a conversation between a doctor and a patient who has got a stomach ache.

## Pronunciation and speaking



Listen and say the words.

fāshāo

tóutòna

	tóutòng	fāshāo	lādùzi	gǎnmào
	L 头痛	发烧	拉肚子	感冒
Tone sandhi: (不) and (一)	débìng	kànbìng	chīyào	dǎzhēn
	2 得病	看病	吃药	打针
Look at the tone marks for — and 不. How do they change when the following character carries a fourth tone?	xiūxi	zháoliáng	tuìshāo	zhùyì
	3 休息	着凉	退烧	注意
	jiǎnchá	fúyòng	kāiyào	zhìbìng
	4 检查	服用	开药	治病
(2. 100-00-00) /A 20 (2.00)				

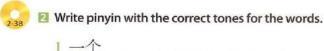
Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your last visit to the doctor.

不用 búyòng 一片 yípiàn 不是 búshì 一件 yíjiàn 一次 yícì 不要 búyào 不错 búcuò 一共 yígòng

How do they change when the following character carries other tones?

不舒服 bùshūfu 一些 yìxiē 不能 bùnéng 一天 yìtiān 不来 bùlái 一年 yìnián 不好 bùhǎo 一点儿 yìdiǎnr

Now listen and repeat.



2 — 瓶 3 不辣 4 不咸

Now listen and repeat.



Say the sentences aloud, using the correct tones.

Wǒ de tóu bú tòng le búyòng chīyào le 1 我的头不痛了,不用吃药了。 Wǒ zhīdào yì zhòng yào zhì gănmào búcuò

2 我知道一种药,治感冒不错。 Wǒ bù zhīdào tā gù bú gù

3 我不知道他去不去?

Yí gè píngguŏ hé yì bēi niúnăi duōshao qián

4 一个 苹果 和一杯牛奶, 多少 钱?

Now listen and repeat.

# 2-41

#### CHINESE TO GO

€

€

ladúzi

Bìng cóng kǒu rù Illness finds its way in 病从口入。 by the mouth. Nǐ de qìsè bù tài hǎo 你的气色不太好。You don't look well. Hǎo yīdiǎnr le ma 好一点儿了吗? Are you feeling any better? Duō bǎozhòng 多保重。 Take care. Zăori kāngfù 早日康复。 Get well soon.



#### Read the poster and answer the questions.

- 1 想健康地生活,应该做什么?
- 2 想健康地生活,不应该做什么?

#### Reading and writing

#### Match the words with the pictures.









hēshuĭ 1喝水

chī shūcài 2吃蔬菜

shuìjiào 3 睡觉

yùndòng 4 运动

Now work in pairs. Put the words in order of their importance for a healthy life.

#### 生词 New words

jiànkāng healthy; health 健康 shēnghuó live; life

生活 chángshí general

常识 knowledge, common sense

de (used to indicate 地 an adverbial phrase)

shūcài 蔬菜

vegetable yán salt 盐

dìngshí

at a fixed time 定时

on time

dingliang with fixed 定量 quantity

ànshí 按时

băo

full, replete 饱

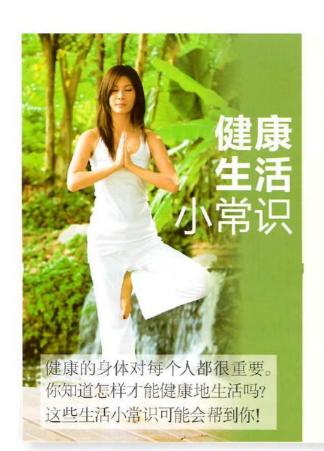
jīngcháng often 经常

zhěngtiān whole day, all

整天 day wăn

晚

late



#### 你吃的东西健康吗?

要多吃蔬菜和水果,少吃多油多盐 的饭菜。

### 你的早、午、晚饭定时定量吗?

要按时吃饭,早饭要吃好,午饭要吃 饱,晚饭要吃少。

#### 你每天喝的水够不够?

要多喝水,每天最少喝八杯水。

#### 你经常做运动吗?

要多做运动,每天最好运动半个小 时。不要整天在家看电视和上网玩 电子游戏。

#### 你每天睡觉的时间够吗?

要早睡早起,每天最少要睡八个小 时。不要很晚才上床睡觉。

	1-12 Anh	12 7/-	
1	应该多吃	,少吃	D.

- 2 早饭应该\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,午饭应该\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, 晚饭应该\_\_\_\_。
- 3 每天最少要喝 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 杯水。4 每天最好做 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 个小时运动。
- 5 每天睡觉最少要 \_\_\_\_\_\_个小时。
- 4 Work in pairs. Write five things you must or mustn't do in order to lead a healthy life.



### Language in use

e

 $\in$ 

0

 $\in$ 

€

#### Look at the sentences.

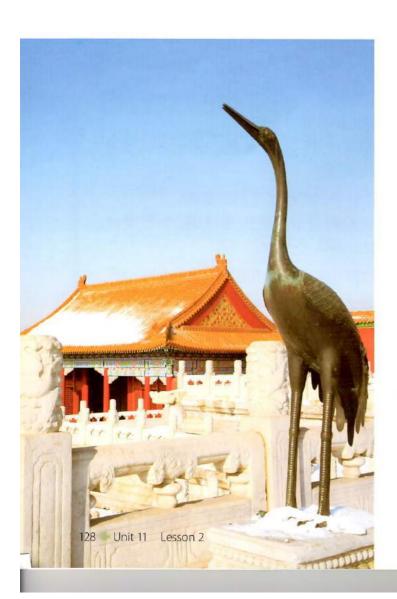
Subject	Modal verb	Adverbial phrase		Verb
人们	想	健康	地	生活。
她		高兴	地	回家了。
你	要	好好	地	休息。
他		慢慢	地	走了。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 地 is used between an adjective and a verb to denote the manner of an action.
- □ 2 地 is used between a verb and its subject to denote the manner of the action.
- □ 3 地 cannot be used after the verb that the adverbial phrase describes.

#### Make sentences using to and the given words.

- 1 慢慢/吃着早餐
- 2 开心/唱着歌
- 3 很快/离开学校
- 4 愉快/去旅行







#### Look at the sentences.

Modal verb	多/少	Verb	Object
要	多	吃	水果和蔬菜。
	多	吃了	两碗饭。
要	多	喝	水。
要	多	做	运动。
	少	看	电视。
	少	写	一个字。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 多 is used before a verb to mean doing something more, while 少 is used before a verb to mean doing something less.
- 2 多 or 少 can be used between the verb they modify and the object to express more or less in quantity.
- When a verb is used with 多 or 少, the additional or lesser quantities can be specified by placing a number and measurement word after the verb.
- Work in pairs. Make two suggestions to each other, using 多 and 少 respectively.

#### Expressing the duration of action

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Adverbial	Verb phrase	Verb	了	Duration
马克	每天	做运动	做		半个小时。
她	下午	打网球	打	了	两个小时。
永民	中午	吃饭	吃	7	十五分钟。
他			走	了	半个小时。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- A noun phrase for the duration of an action is used at the end of the sentence.
- When the verb phrase contains an object, it needs to be followed by a repetition of the verb.
- 3 7 must be used before the verb to indicate that something has already happened.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 I went shopping for three hours last Saturday.
- 2 He has been waiting for me for two hours.
- 3 She eats lunch for one hour every day.
- 4 Mark spent half an hour writing his blog last night.
- Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

## Communication activity

Work in pairs. You are planning to write an article for a school newspaper about a common health problem. Brainstorm problems that you could write about.

Now discuss and choose one problem to write about.

Do research on the following questions, and then write the article together.

生病时会有什么感觉? 为什么会得病? 什么人容易得这种病? 这种病怎么治?

- Work with another pair. Present your article to each other and answer questions.
- Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

# Traditional Chinese medicine (中医中药)

Not only does traditional Chinese medicine still have a big presence in China and in other Asian countries, it is also gaining popularity in the West as an alternative to standard medical practice. The most wellknown forms of Chinese medical treatment include Chinese herbs, acupuncture, tui na massage and cupping. The underlying philosophy of Chinese medicine, upon which its models of human body and medical theories are built, is quite different from that of contemporary western medicine. Chinese medicine treats the human body as a balanced system and views any specific illness as the result of that delicate balance being broken. Hence, Chinese medicine aims at restoring that balance and focuses more on prevention than treatment. A traditional Chinese medicine practitioner uses four techniques for diagnosis, referred to as observation (望), smelling (闻), asking (问) and touching (切).

#### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
斗	sickness	病、瘦
火	fire	焚、炒

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 痛疼烧烦

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 得病
- a fever
- 2 发烧
- b headache
- 3头痛
- c bother
- 4 麻烦
- d get sick
- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



#### Review and practice

Circle the odd word out.

1头痛 感冒 发烧 拉肚子

2 打针 吃药 休息 着凉 3 健康 身体 常识 经常

4 水果 饭菜 蔬菜 按时

- Write sentences using the and the given words.
  - 1 愉快/生活
- 3 慢慢/停下
- 2 很快/走去
- 4 开心/告诉
- Write a sentence to describe each picture.





Now write two suggestions you would give to the people in the pictures.

Work in pairs. Tell each other how long you spent studying, sleeping and eating yesterday.

### Vocabulary extension

Match the words for symptoms with the meanings.

dă pēntì 1 打喷嚏 liú bítì

a dizzy

2 流鼻涕

b stomach ache

ŏutù 3 呕吐

c sore throat

tóuyūn 4 头晕

d sneeze

săngzi téng

5 嗓子 疼

e runny nose

dǔzi tòng 6 肚子痛

f vomit

Now work in pairs. Tell each other when you had any of these symptoms before and try to explain why.

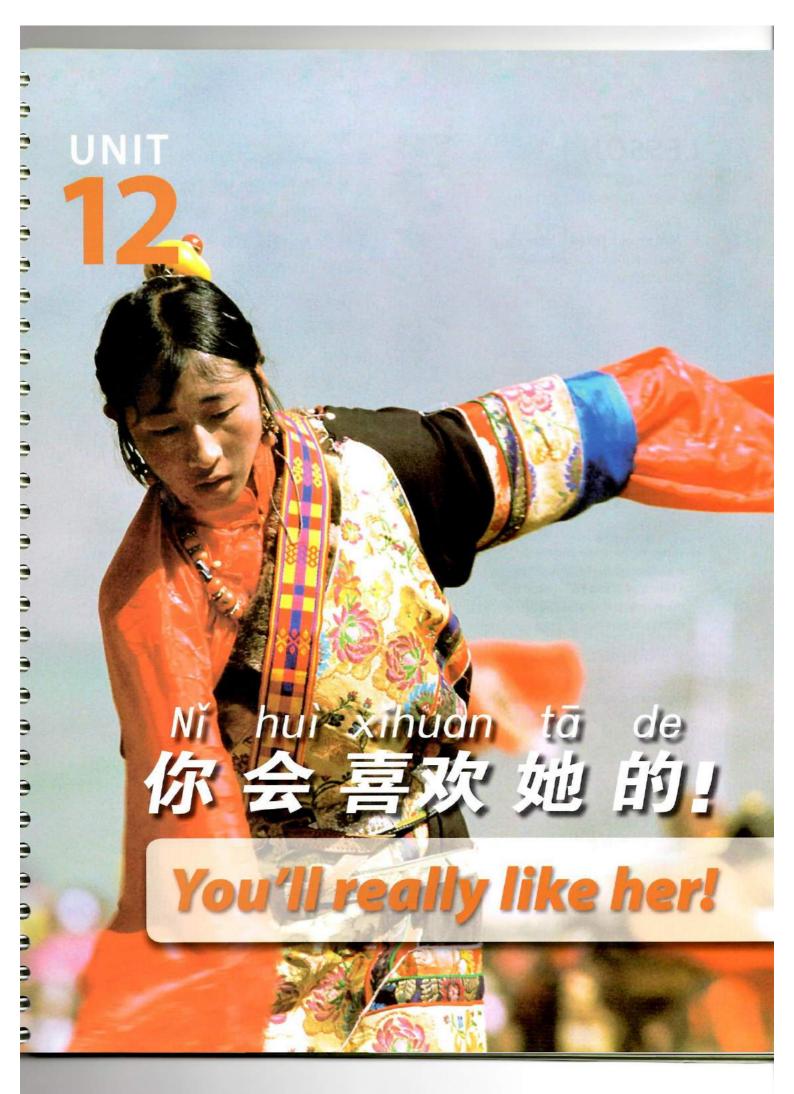


# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

呵	ā	interj.	ah
按时	ànshí	adv.	72 <u></u>
	bǎo	adj.	full, replete
本地	běndì	n.	local area, place
	chángshí	n.	general knowledge, common sense
打针	dăzhēn	V.	
得病	débìng	v.	acquire/get disease
	de	particle	(used to indicate an adverbial phrase)
定量	dìngliàng	v.	with fixed quantity
-	dìngshí	V.	at a fixed time
发烧	fāshāo	V.	n———
肺	fèi	n.	lung
服用	fúyòng	v.	take (medicine)
	gănmào	n./v.	cold
喉咙	hóulóng	n.	
	hùshi	n.	nurse
检查	jiǎnchá	v.	check up, examine
健康	jiànkāng	adj.	
	jīngcháng	adv.	often
拉肚子	lādùzi	v.	
<u> </u>	piàn	measure word	tablet
普通	pǔtōng	adj.	ordinary, common
	shēntĭ	n.	body

生病	shēngbìng	v.	
エバ	shēnghuó	v./n.	live; life
蔬菜	shūcài	n.	
-	tóutòng	v.	headache
退烧	tuìshāo	v.	
	wăn	adv.	late
	xiūxi	V.	rest
盐	yán	n.	
药	yào	n.	medicine
着凉	zháoliáng	V.	catch a cold
整天	zhěngtiān	n.	whole day, all day
	zhì	V.	treat (disease)
注意	zhùyì	v.	
啃	zuĭ	n.	<u> </u>
鼻塞	bísě	n.	stuffy nose
打喷嚏	dă pēnti	V.	sneeze
肚子痛	dŭzi tòng	V.	stomach ache
咳嗽	késou	V.	cough
流鼻涕	liú bítì	V.	runny nose
叹吐	ŏutù	V.	vomit
嗓子疼	săngzi téng	V.	sore throat
头晕	tóuyūn	V.	dizzy
引起睡意	yĭnqĭ shuiyi	V.	cause drowsiness



## Vocabulary and listening



Work in pairs. Tell each other about your best friend's personality, using the words below.

xìnggé 性格

character

píqi

脾气

temper, disposition

lèquān

乐观

optimistic

zìxìn

自信

self-confident

jí píqi

急脾气

hot-tempered

quānxīn

关心

caring, considerate



Wang Yu, Amanda and Mark are at karaoke, chatting about a friend of Wang Yu's. Listen to the conversation and check the correct answers.

1 王玉的朋友凯特是

人。

□ a 美国

□ b 英国

□ c 加拿大

2 凯特现在在北京

□ a 工作

□ b 学中文

□ c 唱歌

3 阿曼达的性格

□ a 不乐观

□ b 急脾气

□ c 不自信

134 - Unit 12 Lesson 1

阿曼达: 王玉,今天还有什么人来?

王玉: 还有我的一个好朋友。你们可以认识一 下。我觉得你会喜欢她的。

马克: 太好了! 她叫什么名字?

王玉: 她叫凯特, 是加拿大人。上个星期刚开 始在北京工作。

阿曼达: 你们是怎么认识的?

王玉: 凯特去年来北京学中文的时候, 我是 她的老师。

马克: 她长什么样子?

王玉: 她中等身材,有双蓝色的大眼睛,金色 的长卷发,跟我一样高。

阿曼达: 是个美女啊! 我们应该把她介绍给史蒂 夫、永民他们。对了,她的性格怎么样?

王玉: 她跟你很像——很乐观、很自信。虽然 脾气有一点儿急,但是很关心朋友。凯 特喜欢交朋友,喜欢唱歌、跳舞。流行



歌曲和民歌她都会唱,特 别是中国民歌"半个月亮爬 上来"唱得特别好听。

马克: 让我猜一猜, 她是不是白 羊座的?

王玉: 你怎么知道?

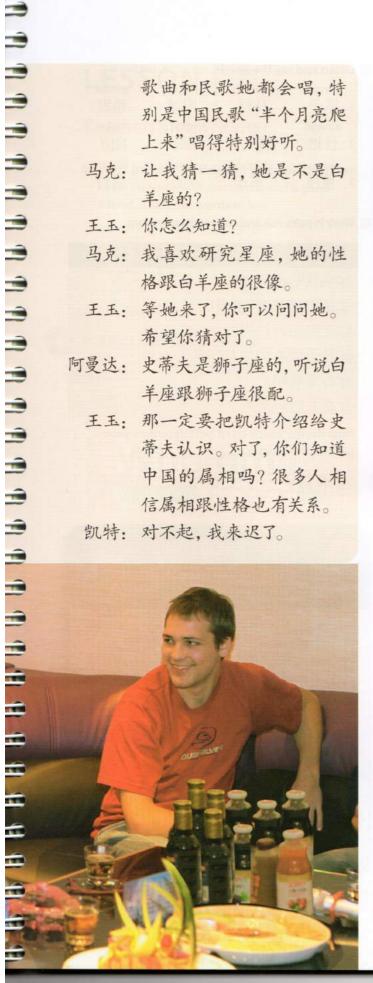
马克: 我喜欢研究星座, 她的性 格跟白羊座的很像。

王玉: 等她来了, 你可以问问她。 希望你猜对了。

阿曼达: 史蒂夫是狮子座的, 听说白 羊座跟狮子座很配。

王玉: 那一定要把凯特介绍给史 蒂夫认识。对了, 你们知道 中国的属相吗?很多人相 信属相跟性格也有关系。

凯特:对不起,我来迟了。



#### 生词 New words

qùnián	last year	mingē	folk song
去年	last year	民歌	
juǎnfà	and the factor	yuèliang	moon
恭发	curly hair	月亮	moon
xìnggé		cāi	211265
性格	character	猜	guess
		Báiyángzuò	
lèguān	optimistic	白羊座	Aries
乐观	No. of the last of	yánjiū	research,
zìxìn	self-confident	研究	study
自信	Seir-connaent	xīngzuò	constellation,
píqi	temper,	星座	star sign
脾气	disposition	shīzi	
jí		狮子	lion
急	irritable; fast, quick	pèi	
		配	match
guānxīn	care about;	shŭxiang	Chinasa
关心	care	属相	Chinese zodiac
liúxíng	and the same of the same	/时/IP xiāngxìn	ZUGIAC
流行	popular	相信	believe
gēqŭ			
歌曲	song	guānxì ¥ Ø	relationship,
-1/C 144		关系	connection



- El Listen again and answer the questions.
  - 1 凯特的性格怎么样?
  - 2 凯特喜欢做什么?
  - 3 王玉说要把凯特介绍给谁?
- Work in pairs. Try to match the characteristics with the Chinese zodiac signs.









- 2 乐观 3 关心人 4 急脾气
- Work in groups of four. Discuss who in the class has the characteristics in Activity 4.

### Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "s" and "sh"

CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE	
The second second	
2.45	
The second second	

- Check the correct initials for the underlined characters.
  - 1 什么 sh 2 认识 sh 3 森林 sh 4 开始 sh 5 老师 sh

sh

Now listen and repeat.

6 蓝色



- Check the correct pinyin for the words.
  - 1 身材 sēncái shēncái 2 时候 síhou shíhou 3 金色 jīnsè jīnshè 4 虽然 suīrán shuīrán 5 狮子 shīzi Sīzi 6 属相 sŭxiang shuxiana

Now listen and repeat.



- Say the sentences aloud.
  - Wǒ zài Shíshīshì de shíhou rènshi tā
  - 1 我在石狮市的时候认识她。 Shǐdìfū xǐhuan de diànshìjù shí diǎn kāishǐ
  - 2 史蒂夫 喜欢 的 电视剧 十 点 开始。 Sì shì sì shí shí shísì shì shísì
  - 3 四是四,十是十,十四是十四, sìshí shì sìshí 四十是四十。

Now listen and repeat.



Listen and say the words.

1	yàngzi	shēncái	yǎnjing	juǎnfà
	样子	身材	眼睛	卷发
2	xìnggé	píqi	lèguān	zìxìn
	性格	脾气	乐观	自信
3	xīngzuò	shǔxiang	guānxīn	liúxíng
	星座	属相	关心	流行

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

问题	Yes	No
你唱歌唱得好听吗?		
你长得很漂亮/帅吗?		
你走路走得快吗?		
你知道朋友的生日吗?		
你有宠物吗?		
你喜欢红色吗?		

Now decide which word best describes your partner's character.

□ 关心人 □ 急脾气



#### CHINESE TO GO

Expressions to describe personality

bù shànyú jiāojì (不)善于交际。 她 Τā bù hảo xiangchủ 他(不)好相处。 Tā de rénpĭn hěn hǎo 她的人品很好。 Nàgè rén hěn chīxiāng 那个人很吃香/ xiǎoxīnyǎn zhíxīnyǎn 小心眼/直心眼。 Bái mã wángzǐ

白马 王子

She is (not) good at socializing.

He is (not) easy to get along with.

She has a nice personality.

That person is very popular / narrow-minded / straightforward.

**Prince Charming** 

#### Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Discuss and agree on the three most important characteristics of a good friend, using the words below.

zìxìn
自信 self-confident
lèguān
乐观 optimistic
dúlì
独立 independent



Read and complete the guiz.

# Who am I?

## 7 我最喜欢的颜色是

- a 红色或者黄色。
- b 褐色或者灰色。
- 。蓝色或者绿色。

#### 2购物的时候,我会

- a 直接去买想要的东西。
- b 问朋友的意见。
- e 去很多不同的商店, 比较东西和价钱。

#### 3 放暑假的时候,我会

- a 去打工挣钱。
- b 和朋友们一起去旅行、爬山 或者潜水。
- 。 在家里看书或者听音乐。

#### 生词 New words

hèsè		_L ×	
	brown	chŏngwù	pet
褐色		宠物	per
huīsè	and the same of th	māo	-
灰色	grey	猫	cat
zhíjiē		gŏu	
直接	direct	狗	dog
yìjiàn		shíjì	
意见	advice	实际	practical
bùtóng		xiǎoxīn	
不同	different	11100	careful
shāngdiàn		xíngdòng	
商店	shop	行动	act; action
dăgōng		zŏngshì	
打工	work, labour	总是	always
zhèngqián		kǎolù	
挣钱	make money	考虑	consider
măshàng		方心 dúlì	
A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	immediately,		independent
马上	at once	独立	macpendent
zīliào	information,	cijī	avcitina
资料	data	刺激	exciting
yǎng	raise, feed		
养	raise, reed		

### 4生病的时候,我会

- a 马上看医生。
- b 打电话给我妈妈,问问应该怎么做。

· 上网找资料, 试新药。

# 5 我最想养的宠物是

- a 一只猫。
- b 一只狗。
- · 几条鱼。



10—16 你很实际,又 很小心。你行 动前总是会 好好考虑。

18—22 你很喜欢交 朋友,对朋友 很关心,不太 独立。

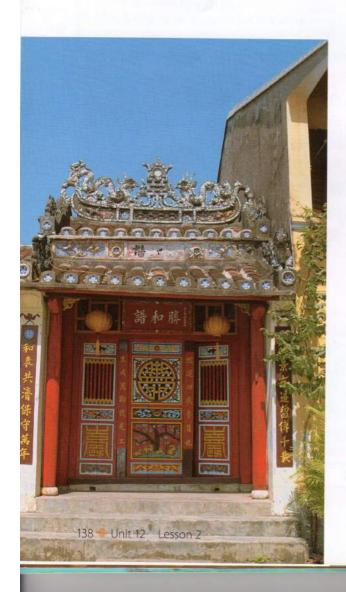
24—30 你很独立、 自信和乐观,喜欢刺激的生活

1 a6 b 2 c 4 2 a 6 b 4 c 2 3 a 2 b 6 c 4 4 a 2 b 4 c 6 5 a 4 b 6 c 2

#### Read again and answer the questions.

- 1 喜欢刺激生活的人可能会喜欢 什么颜色?
- 2 喜欢交朋友的人可能会养什么 宠物?
- 3 你是什么性格的人?
- Choose a person in the class and guess what Chinese zodiac sign they might have. Write a description of their characteristics and hobbies, and explain why you think this.

Now work with the whole class. Find out whether your guesses are correct.



#### Language in use

#### Wh-questions

Look at the sentences.

Question Type				Western .
What	她		пЦ	什么名字?
vviiat	她		пЦ	凯特。
	她		是	谁?
Who	她		是	我姐姐。
VVIIO	谁		会来?	
	永民		会来。	
Where	你		住	在哪里?
VVIICIE	我		住	在北京。
When	你	什么时候	去	我家?
WHEH	我	周末	去	你家。
Why	马克	为什么	不能来?	
vviiy	马克	病了	不能来。	
How	你们	怎么	去	西安?
TIOVV	我们	坐火车	去	西安。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- The position of question words in Chinese sentences is usually the same as in English.
- The position of question words in Chinese sentences is usually different from English.
- In replies in Chinese, the answering information usually appears where the question words were.

#### Answer the questions.

- 1 周末你喜欢做什么?
- 2 你最喜欢的明星是谁?
- 3 你喜欢去哪里旅行? 为什么?
- 4 你什么时候放暑假?
- 5 你怎样认识新朋友?

Difference 有一点 and 一点儿

Look at the sentences.

	Predicate		
Subject	Adverb	Adjective	
她的脾气	有一点	急。	
火车	有一点	不方便。	
这个菜	有一点	辣。	

The same	Predicate			
Subject	Verb	Adjective	Complement	
丽莎	需要	独立	一点儿。	
他	应该	自信	一点儿。	
你	说	慢	一点儿。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 有一点 is often used before an adjective to indicate a positive tone.
- □ 2 一点儿 is used after an adjective to indicate the need for more of something.
- □ 3 有一点 is used before an adjective, while 一点 儿 is used after an adjective.
- Write the sentences in Chinese.

1 Xi'an's winter is a little cold.	Turn to page 171 for grammar reference.
2 You should get up earlier.	Tull to page 17 Tol granimal reference.
3 This dress is a bit too expensive.	
4 Could you speak a bit louder?	
APPEN A	
	Lesson 2 Unit 12 4 139
	THE PROPERTY OF STATES

The auxiliary words 的 / 地 / 得

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate
永民拍的照片	很漂亮。
凯特	有双蓝色的大眼睛。
他	慢慢地放下了书。
大家	都想快乐地生活。
她	高兴得跳起来。
王玉	打网球打得很好。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 的 is used with an adjective phrase to modify a noun.
- □ 2 地 is used between an adverb or adjective and a verb describing the purpose of an action.
- ☐ 3 得 is used between an adjective or a verb and its complement expressing result or degree.
- Complete the sentences with 的, 地 and 得.
  - 1 他跳舞跳 \_\_\_ 很好。
  - 2 小明开心\_\_\_跳了起来。
  - 3 我很喜欢王玉买\_\_\_新裙子。
  - 4 马克在公园拍 照片很漂亮。
  - 5 她小心 \_\_\_ 把电脑放在桌子上面。

## Communication activity

#### Work in groups of four.

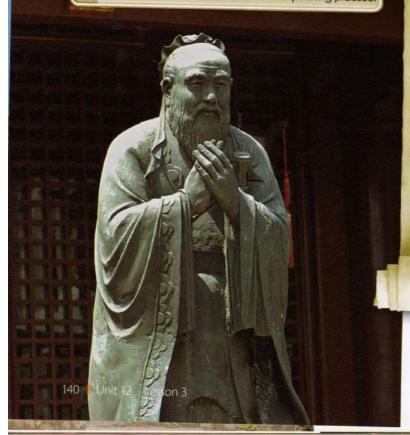
Student A: You are a matchmaker, trying to find the ideal partner for your client. Create a profile for your client, including their name, appearance, personality, background and Chinese zodiac sign. Draw a picture of your client.

**Students B, C and D:** You will each play a suitor for Student A's client. Create a profile of your character, including background, appearance, personality and hobbies. Be creative!

#### Play the Match-making Game.

- Student A: Introduce your client to the suitors.
- Students B, C and D: As your character, introduce yourself to the matchmaker, emphasizing your good points.
- Student A: Ask the suitors questions to find out more about them, and decide which suitor is the best match for your client.

Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.



#### **Cultural Corner**

# The Confucian personality

Confucius (孔子, 551-479BC) was a philosopher who lived during the Spring and Autumn Period. His teachings were required reading for imperial officials from the Han dynasty onwards. Confucian beliefs have been admired and followed for a long time in China. Even today you can still see elements of Confucian belief in Chinese people's perception of personality.

Ren 仁 and li 礼 are two important concepts in Confucian thought.

Ren, sometimes translated as "humaneness" or "benevolence", is the inward expression of the Confucian ideal. Confucius described this personality trait as love for others and an understanding of how important your relationships with other people are.

Li literally means "ritual", and in Confucianism means correct behaviour in society. Confucius taught that correctly following li in all social relationships would lead to a harmonious society, with everyone knowing their place and showing one another the appropriate respect — a father should show kindness to his son, and the son should be obedient. A ruler should be benevolent and his subjects loyal. Social elders should be considerate of their juniors, and the young should defer to them. A husband should be loving and a wife attentive.

Confucius taught that in order to truly follow *li*, one must not only behave outwardly in the proper fashion but also cultivate *ren* within oneself, so right behaviour will come naturally.

### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

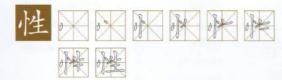
Radicals	Meaning	Examples
1	heart	忙、快
马	horse	马、闯

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 骑 验 怕 慢

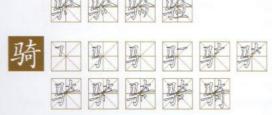
- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 测验

- a be afraid
- 2 性格
- b ride a bike
- 3 怕
- c quiz
- 4 骑车
- d character
- Trace the characters in the boxes.









#### Review and practice

- Match the words with the meanings.
  - 1 乐观
- a independent
- 2 自信
- b clever
- 3 实际
- c optimistic
- 4 独立
- d practical
- 5 聪明
- e self-confident
- Complete the sentences with 有一点 or 一点儿.
  - 1 白羊座的人脾气\_\_\_\_\_急。
  - 2 今天天气\_\_\_\_\_\_\_热。
  - 3 他应该独立 \_\_\_\_\_。
  - 4 你能不能快\_\_\_\_\_?
- B Work in pairs. Ask and answer five wh- questions about each other, using 谁, 什么, 哪里, 什么时候 and 为什么.
- Work in pairs. Tell each other about your hobbies using 得。

Now tell each other how you do certain things using 地.

Imagine you are stranded on a desert island. Write a description of the type of person you would prefer to be with.

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your partner's description.



# Vocabulary extension

Look at the words for personality and check the words that can be used to describe the man on the right.

nàixīn xiūqiè
耐心 patient 羞怯 shy
rènzhēn gùzhi
认真 careful 固执 stubborn
dàfang bēiguān
大方 generous 悲观 pessimistic

Work in pairs. Talk about two people you both know. Try to use the words above.



# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

白羊座	Báiyángzuò	n.	Aries
	bùtóng	adj.	different
猜	cāi	v.	different
宠物	chŏngwù	n.	
刺激	cìjī	V.	exciting
	dăgõng	V.	work, labour
独立	dúlì	adj.	
歌曲	gēqǔ	n.	song
_	gŏu	n.	dog
关系	guānxi	n.	relationship, connection
	guānxīn	v.	care about; care
褐色	hèsè	n.	brown
灰色	huīsè	n.	
	jí	adj.	irritable; fast, quick
卷发	juănfà	n.	curly hair
考虑	kǎolù	V.	
乐观	lèguān	adj.	
充行	liúxíng	adj.	popular
	măshàng	adv.	immediately, at once
	mão	n.	cat
民歌	míngē	n.	folk song
记	pèi	V.	match
卑气	píqi	n.	
	qùnián	n.	last year
	shāngdiàn	n.	shop

狮子	shīzi	n.	
实际	shíjì	adj.	practical
属相	shŭxiang	adv.	Chinese zodiac
	xiăoxīn	adj.	careful
相信	xiāngxìn	V.	B
星座	xīngzuò	n.	constellation, star sign
行动	xíngdòng	v./n.	act; action
	xìnggé	n.	character
研究	yánjiũ	V.	research, study
<del></del>	yăng	V.	raise, feed
意见	yìjiàn	n.	
	yuèliang	n.	moon
挣钱	zhèngqián	V.	
直接	zhíjiē	adj.	direct
资料	zīliào	n.	41 22 22
	zìxìn	adj.	self-confident
总是	zŏngshì	adv.	always
悲观	bēiguān	adj.	pessimistic
诚实	chéngshí	adj.	honest
聪明	congming	adj.	clever
大方	dàfang	adj.	generous
固执	gùzhi	adj.	stubborn
耐心	nàixīn	adj.	patient
认真	rènzhēn	adj.	careful, serious
羞怯	xiūqiè	adj.	shy
勇敢	yŏnggăn	adj.	brave

#### **Review 3**

#### Vocabulary

- Match the adjectives with the nouns.
  - 1 短
- a 脾气
- 2 矮
- b 身材
- 3 急
- c头发
- 4 苗条
- d 性格
- 5 乐观
- e 个子
- Circle the odd word out.
  - 1 动物

植物

自然

保护

2 流行

刺激

普通

经常

3 生病 休息

受凉

身体

4 头发 眼睛

个子

眼镜

- 5 湖泊
- 瀑布

森林

冬画

- Match the verbs with the nouns to make phrases.
  - 1 打
- a 朋友
- 2 吃
- b病
- 3 检查
- c针
- 4 治
- d 身体
- 5 关心
- e 药

Now write five sentences using the phrases above.

- Put the words in the correct categories.
  - a 胖
- d 拉肚子
- g雪山

- b 发烧 e 卷发 h 树木
- c山水 f 头痛 i 瘦

风景	生病	外表/样子

#### Grammar

- Complete the sentences with the correct words.
  - 1 我的作业 \_\_\_\_\_ 做完了。
    - a已经
- b刚才
  - 2 我比我妹妹胖 \_\_\_\_。
  - a有一点 b一点儿
  - 3 明天 下雪吗?

    - a 要 b 会
  - 4 我不发烧了, \_\_\_\_\_感觉也好多了。

    - a而且 b另外
  - 5 我 \_\_\_\_\_\_我的手套了。
  - a找
- b找到

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. 4 Make sentences using the given words.
  - 1 九寨沟/我们/了/到/马上/就要/。 1 看电视时间/百分之……
  - 2 我奶奶/上海/看/会/去/暑假/我/。 2 除了……以外, 还……
  - 3 吃饭/和永民/正在/马克/呢/。
  - 4 里/围巾/那条/放在/把/衣柜/。 4 参加除夕派对/庆祝新年
  - 5 吃/不能/所以/怕/我/辣/川菜/,/。 5 今天下午/就要……了
  - 6他/一样/瘦/他爸爸/跟/。
- Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

地 的 得 不 没

- 1 我不太喜欢吃甜\_\_\_\_。
- 2 王玉说英语说 \_\_\_\_\_ 很好。
- 3 她开心 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 跳起来。
- 4 他跑 \_\_\_\_\_ 很快。
- 5 这里五彩 \_\_\_\_ 湖水真美!
- 6 每个人都想健康 \_\_\_\_\_生活。
- 7 你想 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 想去听音乐会?
- 8 永民买 \_\_\_\_\_ 买那件唐装?
- 9 你有\_\_\_\_\_有吃过午饭?
- 10 这个假期你回\_\_\_\_回家?

- 3 去美国/看朋友
- 6 明年/就要……了
- 7 多/吃健康的饭菜
  - 8 少/玩电子游戏
  - 9 跑步/半个小时

# Integrated skills

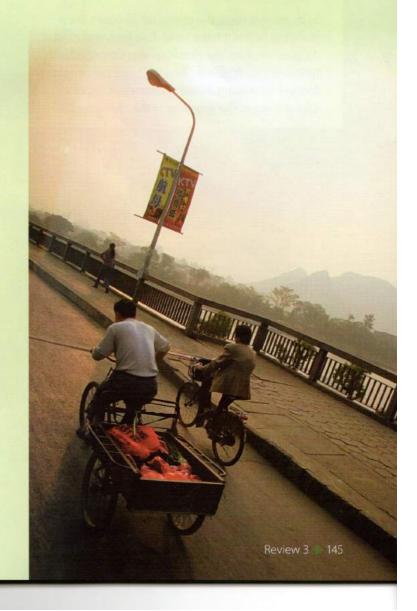


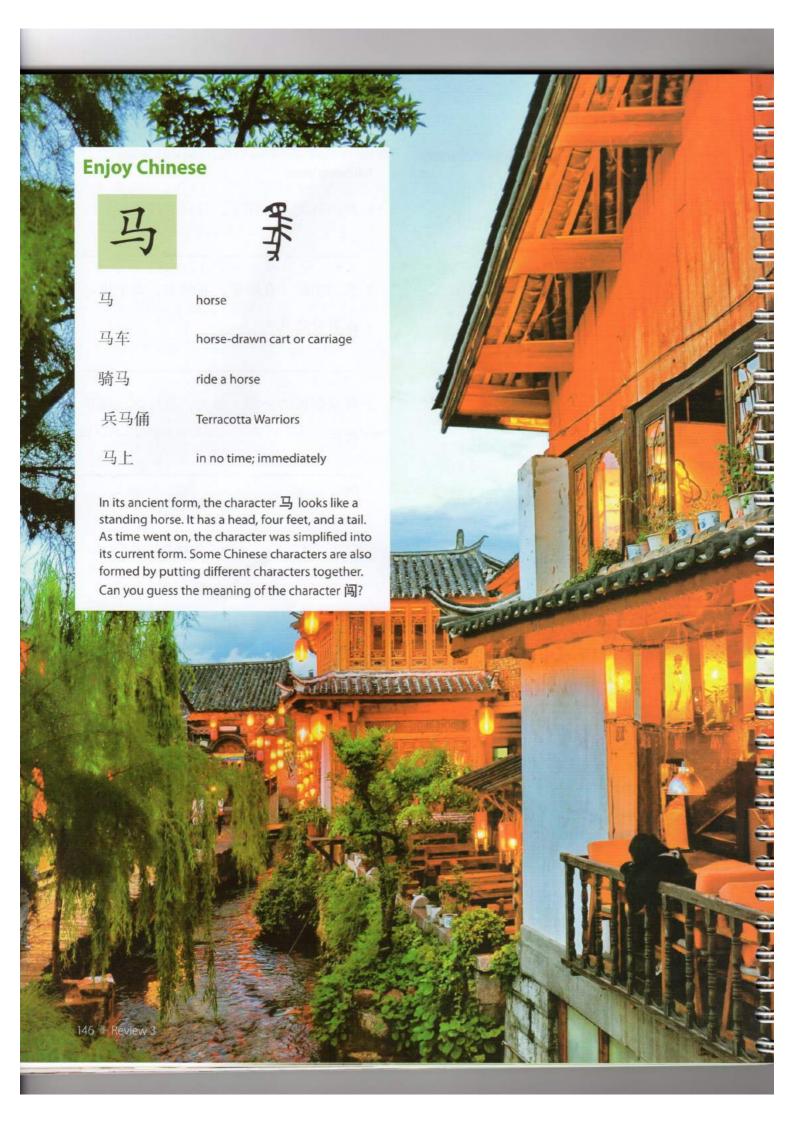
- Listen and choose the most appropriate responses.
  - 1 a 没问题。 b 没错。

  - 2 a不错。 b很有趣!
  - 3 a有, 我去旅行了。
    - b有,我在这里住了两年。
  - 4 a 听不到, 你在说话吗?
  - b 听不到, 你可以大声一点儿吗?
  - 5 a 她又高又瘦。
    - b她很乐观也很自信。
  - 6 a 你应该多喝水, 好好休息。
    - b你应该去跑步,好好吃饭。

ı	Complete the sentences with the words in the brackets.				
	1	我觉	冶料 不舒服,		
			0	(可能)	
	2	我在	派对上玩得很开心,		
			0	(而且)	
	3	如果	上你去成都旅游,	(一定)	
	1	- 当17 化共	∼~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	(一定)	
	7		一	(经常)	
	5		;早一点儿好 <b>,</b>		
			o	(按时)	
Work in pairs. Complete the conversation.					
	王	玉:	这几天我怎么没有看	看到你?	
	딕	克:			
	王	玉:	你为什么会生病?		
	旦	克:		•	
	王	玉:	你去看医生了吗?		
	旦	克:		0	
			医生给你开药了吗?		
	11	克:			
			希望你很快好起来。		
			中土内区区内地下。		

- Write three sentences to describe each of the following items.
  - 1 我的好朋友(样子,身材,性格)
  - 2 我的学校(在哪里,有多大,女学生 占百分之几)
  - 3 我家附近的公园(多大,有什么,风景特点)





## Pinyin pronunciation guide

Sound	Words	Example 1	Example 2
Initials			
b	bed	bō 玻	bēi 杯
n	pin	põ	pãi
р	pin	坡 mō	拍mái
m	moon	摸	埋
f	fun	fó 佛	fā 发
d	day	dé	dā
u	day	得 tè	搭 tā
t	tin	特	他
n	nose	ne 呢	nà 纳
1	long	lè	lā
	long	勒 gē	拉 gāi
g	good	哥	该
k	kind	kē 科	kāi 开
h	hat	hē	hā
		喝ji	哈 jiāo
j	jug	基	交
q		qī 欺	qià 恰
×		ΧĪ	xiāo
188		希 zhī	消 zhā
zh	bridge	知	渣
ch	chin	chī I忆	chá 茶
sh	shirt	shī	shā
- Control		诗 ri	沙 rên
r	reduce	日	人
Z	"ds" in reads	zi 资	zá 杂
С	"ts" in hats	ci 雌	cā 擦
		sī	sè
S	say	思	色
Finals		ā	bā
a	far	阿阿	八
0	saw	wõ 喔	mò 墨
0	her	é	chē
е		鹅 yī	车 bǐ
i	bee	衣	比
u	rude	wū 虫	wū 屋
ü	German Fühlen	yű	nű
		迁 āi	女 bái
ai	eye	哀	白
ei	eight	ēi 欸	féi 月巴
ao	cow	áo	bão
		熬 ðu	包 pōu
ou	oh	欧	剖
an	enhance	ān 安	bān 班
en	taken	ēn	běn
.5.11	- MANAGET	恩	本

ang	gang	áng 昂	bāng 邦
		hēng	bēng
eng	sung	亨	崩
ong	German Lunge	hõng	döng
ong	German Lunge	轰	东
ia	yard	ya 呀	xià 夏
		yē	bié
ie	yes	耶	别
iao	meow	yāo	jião
lau	meow	腰	交
iu	yoga	yōu 优	diũ 丢
10000		yān	plān
ian	yen	烟	偏
in	in	yīn	bīn
111	111	因	宾
iang	e + yang	yāng 央	niáng 娘
	C-12 m/2	火ing	以 bǐng
ing	sing	英	丙
		yong	qióng
iong	German Jünger	雍	穷
ua	guano	wā	guā
	9	蛙 wō	瓜 duō
uo	wall	窝	多
		wāi	guài
uai	why	歪	怪
uei		wēi	wéi
uei		威	围
uan	wan	wān 齊	duǎn 短
MARIET		wēn	及 kun
un	won	温	昆
Hand	u + opcoine	wāng	guãng
uang	u + ongoing	汪	光
ueng		wēng	wèng
		翁 yuē	瓮 quē
üe	ü+eh	yue 约	te
**	400.000	yuān	xuān
üan	ü + an	冤	宜
ün	German grün	yūn	qún m
-	Serman grant	晕	群

# Combinations of pinyin initials and simple finals

simple finals Initials	0	0	0	0	0	0
b	ba	bo		bi	bu	
р	pa	ро		pi	pu	
m	ma	mo	me	mi	mu	
f	fa	fo			fu	
d	da		de	di	du	
t	ta		te	ti	tu	
n	na		ne	ni	nu	nü
1	la		le	li	lu	lü
g	ga		ge		gu	
k	ka		ke		ku	
h	ha		he		hu	
j				ji		jü (ju)
q			Marin.	qi		qü (qu)
X				xi		xü (xu)

## Pair work activities for Student A

## Unit 1

You are planning to meet Student B tomorrow to return some books you borrowed. Look at your timetable for tomorrow below.

3:00 – 10:00	中文课
0:10 – 11:00	中文考试
1:00 – 12:00	
2:00 – 1:00	吃午饭
:00 – 2:00	去图书馆看书
:00 – 4:00	
:00 – 5:00	踢足球
:00 – 6:00	
:00 – 7:00	跟朋友看电影

Discuss and agree on a good time for you to meet.

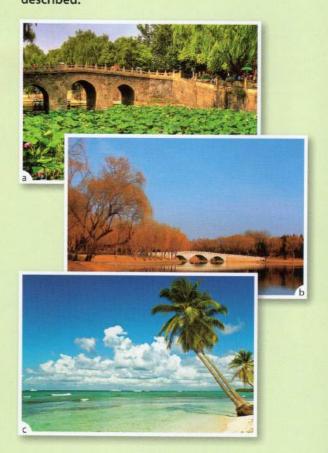


## Unit 2

Describe the scene shown in the picture below, including the sorts of clothes you could wear in that kind of weather, and the activities you could do.

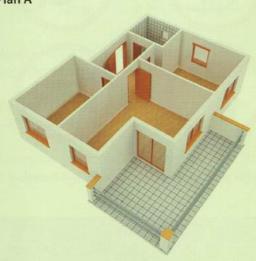


Look at the three pictures below. Listen to Student B's description and say which picture is being described.



Label Plan A with the different rooms and features of your ideal home.

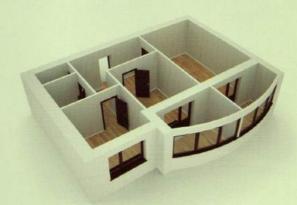
Plan A



- Answer Student B's questions about your ideal home.
- Ask Student B questions and label Plan B with the rooms and features of their dream home.

Plan B

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn

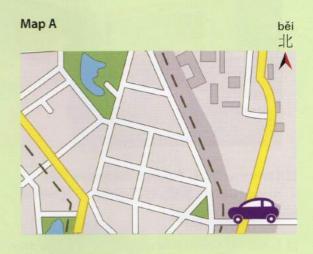


Compare your plans to find out whose Plan B contains the most accurate details.

## Unit 4

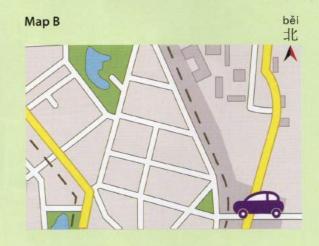
Mark the following places on Map A.

医院 邮局 火车站 出租车站



- Answer Student B's questions about how to get to the places you marked on Map A.
- Ask Student B questions about how to get to the following places and mark them on Map B.

宾馆 银行 博物馆 地铁站



Compare your maps to find out whose Map B contains the most accurate details.

Look carefully at the picture. You have one minute to memorize as many details as possible.



2 Close your book. Describe the picture from memory, using 旁边, 对面, 上面, 下面 when necessary.

## Unit 6

Mime the following signs to Student B.

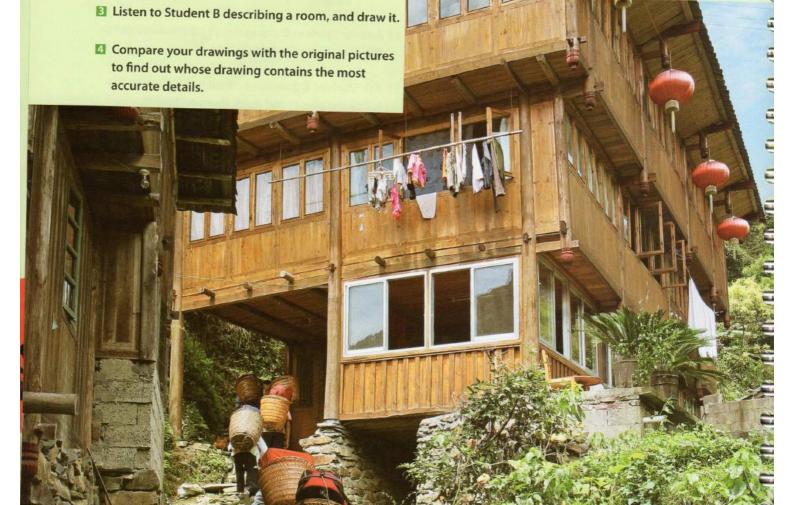








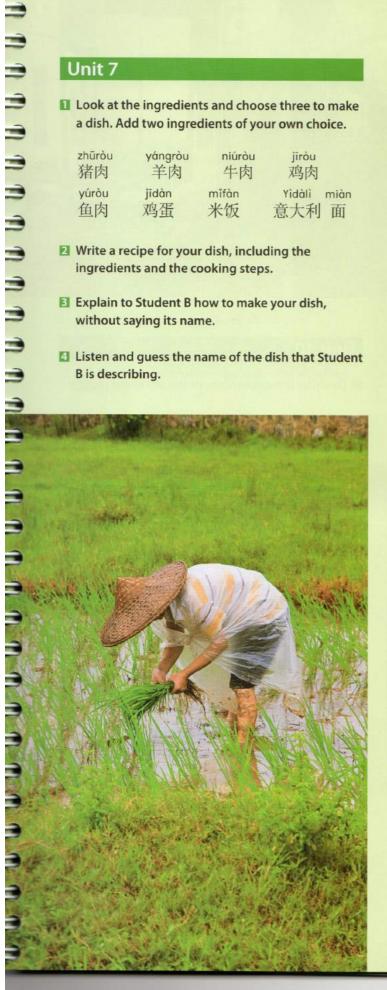
Guess what Student B is miming, in Chinese.



Look at the ingredients and choose three to make a dish. Add two ingredients of your own choice.

zhūròu	yángròu	niúròu	jīròu
猪肉	羊肉	牛肉	鸡肉
yúròu	jīdàn	mǐfàn	Yìdàlì miàn
鱼肉	鸡蛋	米饭	意大利 面

- Write a recipe for your dish, including the ingredients and the cooking steps.
- El Explain to Student B how to make your dish, without saying its name.
- Listen and guess the name of the dish that Student B is describing.

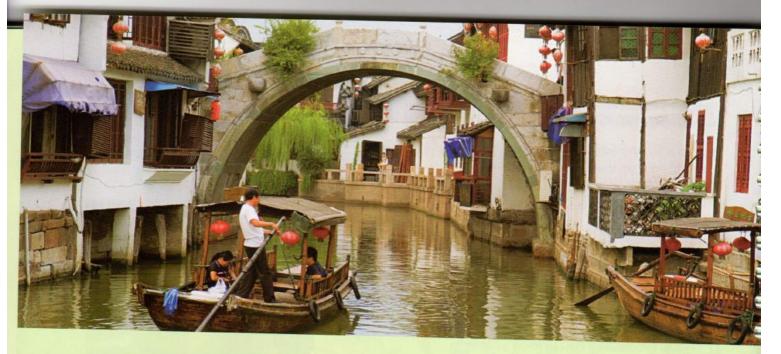


## Unit 8

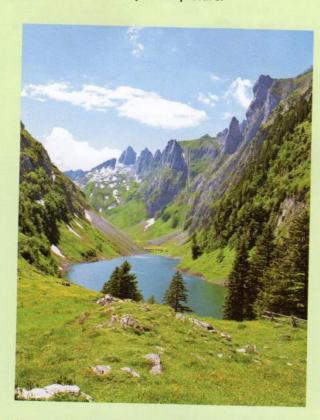
Choose three souvenirs of a trip to China from the objects below-two as gifts for friends and one to keep for yourself.



- Ask Student B about the colour, size and use of the souvenirs and guess which they have chosen. Don't ask what they are.
- El Answer Student B's questions about your souvenirs. Don't say what they are.



Describe the scenery in the picture.



Listen to Student B's description of their picture.

THE PERSON OF TH

Ask each other questions to find out the differences between your pictures.

## Unit 10

Describe the appearance of the girl in the picture.



- Listen to Student B's description of the girl in the picture when she was 30 years old.
- Ask each other questions to find out how her appearance has changed.

11 You have a headache, a blocked nose and a cough, and you want to buy some medicine at a pharmacy. Prepare some questions to ask the pharmacist about the medicine they give you. Use the words below.

yàomíng

药名

medicine name

bùliáng fănyìng

不良 反应

side effects

- Answer Student B's questions about your symptoms.
- B Ask Student B questions about the details of the medicine.

## Unit 12

Describe the two candidates who are applying for the post of Student Events Manager at your school.

姓名: Jessica

国籍: 巴西

性格:自信、乐观

爱好:跳舞、潜水



姓名: Jean-Philippe

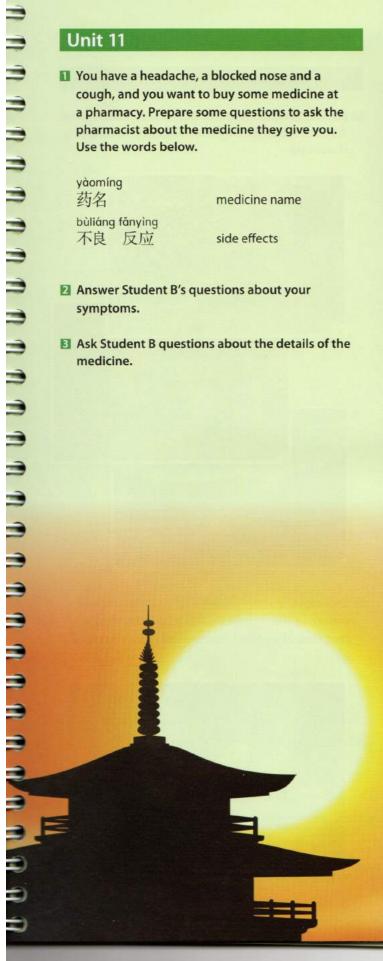
国籍: 法国

性格:独立、自信

爱好: 唱民歌、购物



- Listen to Student B's description of their candidates.
- Ask each other questions about the candidates. Choose the best person for the job from the four candidates.



## Pair work activities for Student B

## Unit 1

You are planning to meet Student A tomorrow to get some books. Look at your timetable for tomorrow below.

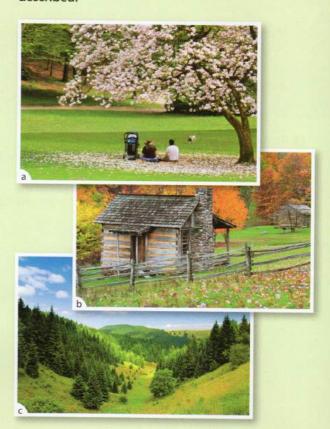
8:00 – 10:00	英文课
10:10 – 11:00	
11:00 – 12:00	复习准备考试
12:00 – 1:00	
1:00 – 2:00	跟朋友们一起吃午饭
2:00 – 4:00	
4:00 – 5:00	去超市买东西
5:00 – 6:00	做作业
6:00 – 7:00	

Discuss and agree on a good time for you to meet.



## Unit 2

Look at the three pictures below. Listen to Student A's description and say which of the three is being described.



Describe the scene shown in the picture below, including the sorts of clothes you could wear in that kind of weather, and the activities you could do.



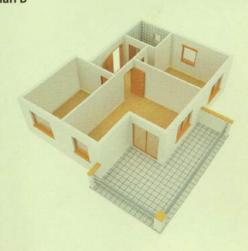
■ Label Plan A with the different rooms and features of your ideal home.

Plan A



Ask Student A questions and label Plan B with the rooms and features of their dream home.

Plan B

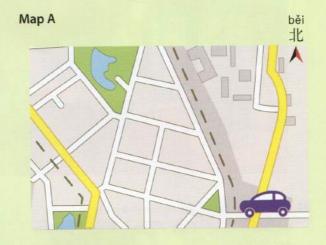


- Answer Student A's questions about your ideal home.
- Compare your plans to find out whose Plan B contains the most accurate details.

## Unit 4

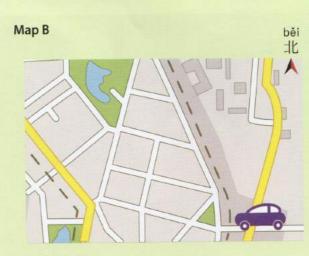
Mark these places on Map A.

宾馆 银行 博物馆 地铁站



Ask Student A questions about how to get to the following places and mark them on Map B.

医院 邮局 火车站 出租车站



- Answer Student A's questions about how to get to the places you marked on Map A.
- Compare your maps to find out whose Map B contains the most accurate details.

- Listen to Student A describing a room, and draw it.
- Look carefully at the picture. You have one minute to memorize as many details as possible.



- El Close your book. Describe the picture from memory, using 旁边, 对面, 上面, 下面 when necessary.
- Compare your drawings with the original pictures to find out whose drawing contains the most accurate details.

- Guess what Student A is miming, in Chinese.
- Mime the following signs to Student A.







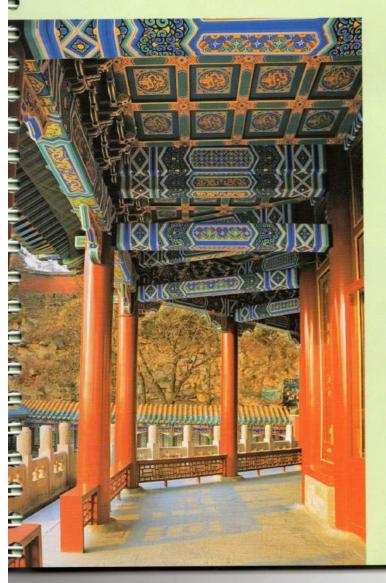




Look at the ingredients and choose three to make a dish. Add two ingredients of your own choice.

zhūròu	yángròu	niúròu	jīròu	
猪肉	羊肉	牛肉	鸡肉	
yúròu	jīdàn	mǐfàn	Yidàli	miàn
鱼肉	鸡蛋	米饭	意大利	面

- Write a recipe for your dish, including the ingredients and the cooking steps.
- Isten and guess the name of the dish that Student A is describing.
- Explain to Student A how to make your dish, without saying its name.

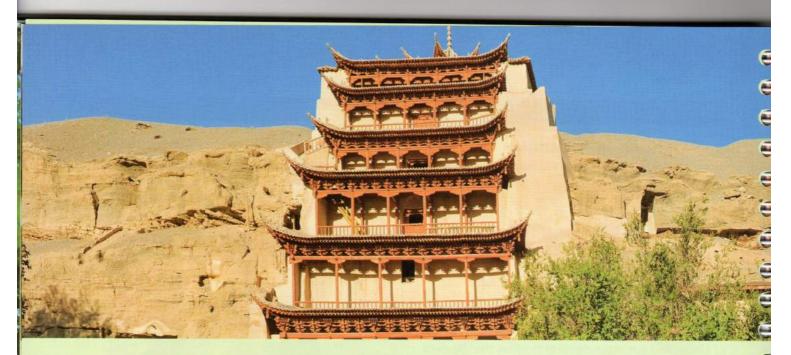


## Unit 8

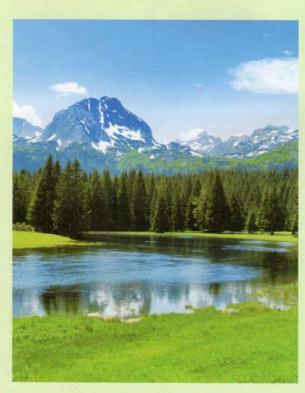
Choose three souvenirs of a trip to China from the objects below—two as gifts for friends and one to keep for yourself.



- Answer Student A's questions about your souvenirs. Don't say what they are.
- Ask Student A about the colour, size, and use of the souvenirs, and guess which they have chosen. Don't ask what they are.



- Listen to Student A's description of their picture.
- Describe the scenery in the picture.



Ask each other questions to find out the differences between your pictures.

## Unit 10

- Listen to Student A's description of the woman in the picture below when she was seven years old.
- Describe the appearance of the woman in the picture.



Ask each other questions to find out how her appearance has changed.

You are a pharmacist. Read the medicine label and prepare to answer questions about it.

yàomíng gănmào ging 药名: 感冒 清 zhŭzhì gănmào fāshāo bísāi 主治: 感冒,发烧,鼻塞 bùliáng fănyìng kǒu gān wèibù bù shūfu 不良 反应: 口干、胃部不舒服、 tóuyūn děng 无力、头晕 等 yòngfă yòngliàng kǒufú měi shí' èr xiǎoshí fú 口服,每 12 小时服 用法 用量: yī piàn èrshísì xiǎoshí nèi bù 1 片, 24 小时内不 néng duō yú liăng piàn 能多于两片 zhùyì shìxiàng fú yào shí bù néng hē jiǔ 注意 事项: 服药时不能喝酒

- Ask Student A questions about their symptoms.
- Answer Student A's questions about the medicine.

## Unit 12

- Listen to Student A's description of their candidates who are applying for the post of Student Events Manager at your school.
- Describe these two candidates who are applying for the same post.

姓名: Pak Jimin

国籍: 韩国

性格: 关心别人、诚实

爱好:在家看书、听

音乐



姓名: Stefan

国籍: 德国

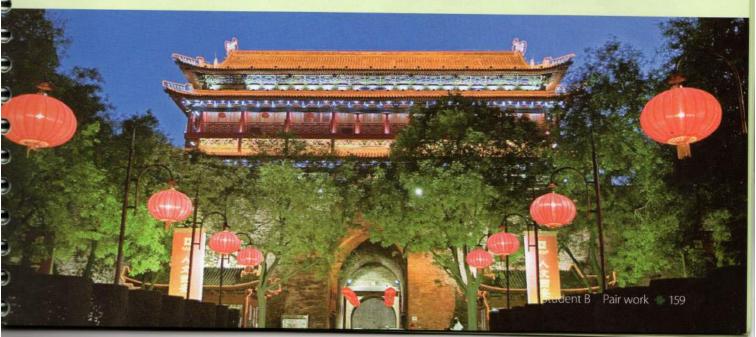
性格: 急脾气、勇敢

爱好: 蹦极、滑雪



Ask each other questions about the candidates.

Choose the best person for the job from the four candidates.



## The auxiliary word 得

The auxiliary word 得 is used between a verb and its complement to indicate result or degree. An adjective phrase is used after 得 as the verb complement. There can be two verbs in a sentence with 得 to indicate the complement. The first verb phrase expresses an event, while the second verb expresses the exact action involved in the event. The second verb should be the same as the verb included in the first verb phrase. To negate the sentence, the adverb 不 is used at the beginning of the adjective phrase as part of the complement. For example,

Subject	Verb phrase	Verb	de 得	Complement		
Mǎkè 马克	tiào 跳	1000		hěn gāo 很高。		
Mark jur	mps very hi	gh.				
Tā 他	pǎo 跑		de 得	kuài 快。		
He runs	quickly.					
Nǐ 你	chànggē 唱歌	chàng 唱	de 得	hěn hǎoting 很好听。		
You sing	very well.					
Tā 她	tiàowǔ 跳舞	tiào 跳	de 得	bù hǎo 不好。		
She doe	s not dance	e well.				
Mèimei 妹妹	chī fàn 吃饭	chī 吃	de 得	hěn màn 很慢。		
My little sister eats slowly.						
wŏ 我	kànshū 看书	kàn 看	de 得	bù kuài 不快。		
I don't re	ead books	very qui	ckly.			

#### **Topic-comment sentences**

When a piece of information is already known to the speakers, it is often put at the beginning of a sentence as the subject. This structure is called a topic-comment sentence, which is different from the usual word order of Chinese sentences.

#### For example,

Topic	Comment			
Xîngqîsān de kǎoshì 星期三的考试	wǒ zhǔnbèi hǎo le 我准备好了。			
I have finished preparing for	Wednesday's test.			
Xīngqītiān yīqǐ qù chīfàn 星期天一起去吃饭	tā hái bù zhīdào 她还不知道。			
She still doesn't know about Sunday.	ut going to eat together on			
Míngtiān jiāo zuòyè 明天 交作业	dāngrán bù kěnéng 当然 不可能。			
Of course it's impossible to hand in the homework tomorrow.				
Yībiān gōngzuò yībiān dúshū 一边 工作 一边 读书	tài nán le 太难了。			

Working and studying at the same time is too difficult.

## 了 as a particle and an auxiliary word

Besides being used as an auxiliary word placed after a verb to express past actions, \( \cap \) can also be used as a particle placed at the end of a sentence to indicate a statement, showing a change of situation or state. For example,

Subject	Predicate
tā 他	qù le Běijīng 去了北京。
He went to Beijin	g.
Nǐ 你	chīfàn le ma 吃饭了吗?
Have you eaten?	
Wǒ 我	zhīdào zhè jiàn shì le 知道 这件事了。
I know (now) abo	out this whole thing.
Wáng yù 王玉	qù shàngkè le 去 上课 了。
Wang Yu went to	class.

## Expressing succession using —······就······

For example,

Tā yī shàngkè jiù xiǎng shuìjiào 他一上课就想睡觉。

As soon as he began class he wanted to sleep.

jiù gĕi nĭ dă diànhuà Wǒ yī dào Xĩ ān 我一到西安,就给你打电话。

As soon as I reach Xi'an, I'll give you a call.

Wǒ yī huílai tā jiù chūqù 我一回来,他就出去。

As soon as I came back, he went out.

------就······ can also be used to connect a time phrase and an action or event, meaning something will happen as soon as the time comes. For example,

Yī dào zhōumò tā jiù qù kàn yéye 一到 周末,她就去看爷爷。

As soon as the weekend comes, I'll go to see Grandpa.

Yī dào shǔjià wǒ jiù qù lǚxíng 一到暑假,我就去旅行。

Once it's the summer holidays, I'm going travelling.

Yī dào wănshang jiǔ diǎn wǒ jiù shàng chuáng shuìjiào 一到 晚上 九点,我就上 床 睡觉。

When it gets to 9 pm, I'll go to bed.

#### Unit 2

	hé	chabuduō	yiyang
<b>Expressing similarity using</b>	A和B+	差不多/	一样

"A和B + 差不多 / 一样" is used to express similarity between two things. 差不多 is often used alone as the predicate, meaning "almost the same". 一样 means "the same" or "identical". It can stand alone, or be followed by an adjective as its complement stating the specific details of the similarity. For example,

Α	hé 和	В	Adjective	Complement
Zhè jiàn yifu 这件衣服 de jiàqián 的价钱	hé 和	nà jiàn 那件 yīfu de (衣服的 jiàqián 价钱)	chàbuduō 差不多。	

The prices of this item of clothing and that one are almost the same.

A	hé 和	В	Adjective	Complement
Běijīng de 北京的 tiānqi 天气	hé 和	Contract of the A	差不多ma	
Is the weath	er in	Beijing and N	lew York sim	ilar?
· Zhèlǐ de 这里的 wēndù 温度	hé 和	1412	yīyàng 一样。	
The tempera	ture	here is the sa	ame as there	
Mèimei 妹妹	hé 和	jiějie 姐姐	yīyàng 一样	piàoliang 漂亮。
The younger	and	elder sisters	are equally	oretty.

## Making comparisons using A 比/没有B + adjective

"AttB + adjective" is used to make the comparison between two things, meaning the former is higher in degree than the latter. 没有 is used to express that A is less or lower in degree than B. When the same head noun is used in both A and B, the head noun in B can be left out to avoid repetition. For example,

A	bǐ méiyǒu 比/没有	В	Adjective	
zhōngguó 中国 dàxué de 大学的 shàngkè shíjiān 上课 时间	PL PL	Yingguó dàxué 英国 大学 de shàngkè 的(上课 shíjiān 时间)	zǎo 早。	
Classes in Chinese universities start earlier than those in British universities.				
Jîntiān de tiānqì 今天的天气	bì LL	zuótiān de 昨天的 tiāngì (天气)	hǎo 好。	
Today's weather is nicer than yesterday's.				
Zhèxiē zhàopiàn 这些 照片	méiyǒu 没有	nàxiē 那些 zhàopiàn	piàoliang 漂亮。	

(照片)

Běijīng

北京

méiyŏu

没有

Xi'an is not as big as Beijing.

Xī' ān

西安

These photographs are not as pretty as those.

dà

大。

## Expressing future actions with 要 / 会

要 can be a modal verb, meaning 需要 (need). For example, 我要买一件大衣。(I need to buy a coat.)

When 要 is used to express future actions, it usually indicates something that the speaker intends to do. For example, 我要去看电影。(I'm going to go and see a film.)

Besides expressing ability (e.g. 她会说日语), the modal verb 会 can also be used to express a future event, indicating a high probability. 不 is used before 会 to negate sentences about future events. Sometimes 的 is used at the end of the sentences to strengthen the certainty.

Adverbial of time	Subject	Modal verb	Verb phrase			
Jīntiān wǎnshang 今天 晚上	-	hui 会	lái ma 来吗?			
Will Yeong-min	come to	night?				
	tā 他	bù huì 不会	lái le 来了。			
He won't come	He won't come.					
	wŏ 我	huì 会	gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de 给你打电话的。			
I'm going to phone you.						
Zhōumò 周末	wŏ 我	huì 会	qù kàn nǐ de 去看你的。			
I'm going to go and see you at the weekend.						

## Unit 3

#### zhèngzò Expressing actions in progress using 正在

正在 is an adverb used before a verb phrase to indicate that something is taking place or someone is right in the middle of doing something at the time mentioned. Either 正 or 在 can be left out if the emphasis is on the event as a whole instead of something happening at that moment. Sometimes, 呢 can be used at the end of a progressive sentence to emphasize the continuousness of the action or event. For example,

Subject	zhèngzài 正在	Verb phrase	ne 呢		
Wŏ 我	zhèngzài 正在	mǎi dōngxi 买东西。			
iddle of sh	nopping.				
Yǒngmín 永民	zhèng (正) zài 在	dǎ lángiú 打篮球	ne 呢。		
At four yesterday afternoon, Yeong-min was playing basketball.					
wŏ 我	zhèng 正 zài (在)	kàn diànshì 看电视	ne 呢。		
	wŏ 我 iddle of sl Yŏngmin 永民 erday after	Subject 正在 wǒ zhèngzài 正在 iddle of shopping. yǒngmin (正) 欢民 zài 在 rday afternoon, Yeon  zhèng zài 在 rday afternoon, Yeon	Subject 正在 phrase  Wǒ zhèngzài mǎi dōngxi 买东西。  iddle of shopping.  Yǒngmín (正) dǎ lánqiú 打篮球在  rday afternoon, Yeong-min was processor said said said shi said said said said said said said sai		

#### yòu yòu Expressing "both... and..." with 又······又······

又……又…… is used to express equal characteristics of a person or entity, and concurrent actions, events or circumstances. It can be used to link verb phrases and adjective phrases. The words connected by又……又…… should be of the same structure or part of speech, stating things that do not contradict with each other. When adjective phrases are linked, the adverb 很, meaning "very" and usually placed before the adjectives, can be left out. For example,

Second

Time / Place / First condition/

Manner	quality	condition/quality
	Ditiě hến kuải 地铁很快。	Ditiě hěn piányi 地铁很便宜。
Dìtiě yòu kuải yòu 地铁又快又	CONTRACTOR	
The subway is bo	th quick and chea	ip.
zài pàidui shang 在派对上,	tā chànggē 他 唱歌,	tā tiàowǔ 他跳舞。
zài pàiduì shang 在派对上,		
At the party, he v	vas singing and da	ancing.

#### xiān ránhòu Expressing sequences with 先······然后······

先……然后…… expresses a succession of actions or sequence of events. 先 must be placed after the subject of the first action or event, while 然后 is usually placed before the subject of the following action or event. The second subject is often left out if it is the same as the first subject. For example,

First event / action		Second event / action		
wŏ xiān kàn shū 我先看书,		ránhòu qù dǎ wǎngqiú 然后去打网球。		
	First I read, then I go to p	lay tennis.		
	Wáng Yù xiān qù kàn 王 玉 先 去 看 yéye 爷爷,	ránhòu hé Shǐdifū kàn 然后 和史蒂夫 看 diànyīng 电影 。		
	First Wang Yu went to so watched a film with Stev	ee her grandfather, then she e.		
Míngtiān wǒ yào xiān qù 明天 我要先去		ránhòu qù chāoshì mǎi 然后去超市买		

Tomorrow I'm going to go to the bank first, then I'll go shopping at the supermarket.

döngxi

东西。

### Unit 4

yinháng

银行,

#### | duōyuǎn | Talking about distance using 离 / 多 远

离 is used to express how far away one place is from the other. The subject takes the form of A离B. The distance can be described simply with an adjective, precisely with physical distance, or approximately with time spent on transportation. For example,

Subject	Predicate
Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào 我家离学校	hěn jìn 很近。
My home is very close	to the college.
Xīní lí Mò'ěrběn 悉尼离墨尔本	dàyuē gōnglǐ 大约 900 公里。
Sydney is about 900km	from Melbourne.
Niùyuē li Bōshìdùn 纽约离波士顿	kāi chē sì gè xiǎoshí 开车四个小时。
New York is four hours'	drive from Boston.

If the starting or ending point of a distance is obviously known in the context, 离 and the known point can be left out of the sentence. For example,

Nǐ jiā duō yuǎn 你家多远?How far away is your home?

zǒulù shí fēnzhōng 走路十分钟。It takes ten minutes on foot.

## Expressing distance using 从 A 到 B

"从A到B" is used to describe the distance between two places, with A being the starting point and B the ending point. The topic takes the form "从A到B", which is often followed by a comment including a verb phrase and the duration of time.

Topic				Comment		
cóng 从	А	dào 到	В	Verb phrase	Duration	
Cóng 从	Lúndūn 伦敦	dào 到	Bāli 巴黎,	zuò gāosù 坐高速 huŏchē 火车	zui fāngbiàn 最 方便 。	
High	High-speed train is the most convenient way from					
London to Paris.						
					shi fēnzhōng 十 分钟。	
It ta	It takes ten minutes to walk from the college to my					
hou	se.					
Cóng 从	Xī'ān 西安			kāi chē 开车	shíjiān hěn cháng 时间很长。	
It tal	It takes a long time to drive from Xi'an to Beijing.					

"从A到B" can also be used to express the starting and ending points of a period of time. For example,

Cóng Xīngqīyī dào Xīngqīwǔ měitlān wǒ dōu yǒu hěn duō 从 星期一 到 星期五,每天 我 都 有 很 多 zuòyè 作业。

I have a lot of homework from Monday to Friday.

Cóng xiǎo dào dà wǒ dōu hēn xǐhuan chànggē 从小到大,我都很喜欢唱歌。

I have liked singing very much since childhood.

#### yǐhòu de shihou Using 以后 / ······的 时候

以后 is used together with a verb phrase or time phrase to express a sequence of actions or events, meaning "after". It is used at the end of an adverbial phrase or clause stating time, which can be put before or after the subject of the sentence. For example,

Adverbial clause	Subject	Adverbial	Predicate	
Huíjiā yǐhòu 回家以后,	wŏ 我		gěi Ānnà dǎ diànhuà 给安娜打电话。	
After I got home, I telephoned Anna.				
Liǎng nián yǐhòu 两 年以后,			yào qù Měiguó 要去美国。	
After two years	, Xiao Ming	g will go to	America.	
	Wǒ māma 我妈妈	sān tiān 三天 yǐhòu 以后	lái kàn wǒ 来看我。	

·····的时候 is also used at the end of an adverbial phrase or clause stating time, meaning "when".

hái méiyǒu zuò wán zuòyè 克 还没有做完作业。 ark had still not finished his
ark had still not finished his
and the seminor inflored ins
qù le diànyǐngyuàn 去了 电影院 。

#### Unit 5

## Expressing possession, existence or location with 有

有 is used to express possession. The subject of the possession sentence with 有 can be a person or something. For example,

Wǒ yǒu hěnduō gùshishū 我有很多故事书。

I have a lot of story books.

Bówùguăn yǒu hěnduō wénwù

博物馆 有 很多 文物。The museum has many artefacts.

xī ān yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ 西安有几千 年的历史。

Xi'an has several thousand years of history.

有 can also be used to describe the existence or location of one thing in relation to another. The subject is usually a locative phrase, which contains or is equal in size to the object. For example,

Locative phrase		Verb	Noun phrase		
wǒ de yīguì 我的衣柜	里里	yǒu 有	hěnduō yīfu 很多衣服。		
There are a lo	ot of cloth	nes in	my wardrobe.		
Zhuōzi 桌子	xiàmiàn 下面	Dark Control	yī shuāng xié 一 双 鞋。		
There's a pair of shoes under the table.					
wǒ de gōngyù 我的公寓		yǒu 有	yī gè chāoshì 一个超市。		
There is a supermarket in front of my building.					
Xuéxiào 学校	dōngbian 东边				
There is a cinema to the east of the college.					

Expressing adequacy with 够 / 不够

够 is used as a verb with its own complement, meaning "be enough / sufficient" or "reach (a standard)". Its negative form is 不够. For example,

Wǒmen diǎn de cài gòu ma 我们点的菜够吗?

Have we ordered enough food?

wǒ de shíjiān bù gòu yòng 我的时间不够用。

I don't have enough time.

够 can also be used as an adverb before some adjectives, meaning "enough" or "really". For example,

Jintiān de tiānqì gòu lěng wǒmen kěyǐ chī huǒguō 今天的天气够冷,我们可以吃火锅。

Today's weather is cold enough for us to have hot pot.

bàn gè xiǎoshí jiù kěyǐ dào Kāi chē gòu kuài 开车够快,半个小时就可以到 bīngmāyŏng bówùguǎn 兵马俑 博物馆。

Driving is really fast, and it takes only half an hour to get to the Terracotta Warriors museum.

#### Complements expressing result

An adjective or a verb phrase is often used after a verb as its complement to indicate result. For example,

Subject	Verb	Complement				
wŏ 我	xiě 写	wán le 完了。				
I finished writi	ng.					
Tā de shǒujī 她的手机		bù dào le 不到了。				
She couldn't f	ind her mobile	e phone.				
Nǐ 你	kàn 看	dǒng le ma 懂了吗?				
Did you understand that?						
wŏ 我	zhǔnbèi 准备	hǎo le 好了。				
I'm (fully) read	I'm (fully) ready.					
Yifu 衣服	xī 洗	gānjìng le 干净了。				
The clothes have been cleaned.						
Nǐ 你	zuò 做	duì le 对了。				
You did it right.						

### you duo dà cháng kuôn Questions about size with (有) 多大/长/宽

多 means "to what extent" when used in questions. It is often used to modify words expressing measurements such as 大, 长, 宽, 高, etc. The verb 有 is optionally used in the questions about sizes. In answers to questions about sizes, the word expressing measurement can be used as the predicate. 有 can also be used to introduce the size followed by the word expressing measurement.

#### Ouestion

C. Line	Predicate		
Subject	Verb	Question word	
Zhège tǐyùchǎng 这个体育场	yǒu (有)	duō dà 多大?	
How big is the sport	s ground?		

#### Answers

Subject	Verb	Measurement	Size	Measurement	
Zhège tǐyùchǎng 这个体育场		cháng 长	mǐ 500 米。		
Zhège tǐyùchẳng 这个体育场	yǒu (有)		mǐ 500 米	cháng 长。	
This sports gro	und is	500m long.			
Zhège tǐyùchǎng 这个体育场		kuān 宽	mǐ 400 米。		
Zhège tǐyùchǎng 这个体育场	yǒu (有)		mǐ 400米	kuān 宽。	
This sports ground is 400m wide.					

## Unit 6

## Expressing passive voice using 被

被 is used to form passive voice sentences, emphasizing the object being acted upon and the changes that take place as a consequence of the action. The object being acted upon is used as the subject before 被. The doer of the action is used after 被, and can be omitted if it is not known or not necessary to be mentioned.

Subject	Ad	Adverbial				
	bèi 被	Doer	Verb	Complement		
wǒ de yīfu 我的衣服	bèi 被	rén (人)	ná 拿	zǒu le 走了。		
My clothes we	My clothes were taken (by someone).					
Wǒ de wǎnfàn 我的晚饭	bèi 被	dìdi 弟弟	chī 吃	le T <sub>o</sub>		
My dinner was	eaten b	y my little	brother.			
Zhè běn shū 这本书	bèi 被	tā 他	mǎi 买	le 了。		
This book was bought by him.						

## Expressing a continuing action or state with 着

着 is used after a verb to indicate the continuation of an action or a state. The verb should be stative, expressing the status of something resulting from an action, such as 穿, 戴, 坐, 写, 放, 贴, 挂, etc.

For example,

Subject	Verb	zhe 着	Object		
Yǒngmín 永民	dài 戴	zhe 着	tàiyángjìng 太阳镜。		
Yeong-min is	wearing s	unglasses.			
Tā 如	chuān 穿	zhe 着	hóng qúnzi 红 裙子。		
She is wearin	ig a red ski	rt.			
Fángjiān li 房间 里	zuò 坐	zhe 着	yī wèi xiānsheng 一位 先生。		
There is a ger	ntleman si	tting in the	room.		
zhuōzi shang 桌子 上	fàng 放	zhe 着	yì gè diànhuà 一个电话。		
A telephone is on the table.					
Ménkŏu  `☐☐	guà 挂	zhe 着	hóng dēnglong 红 灯笼。		
Red lanterns are hanging from the gate.					

## 是·····的 constructions

是·····的 is used to talk about a certain aspect of a past action or event. In this structure the focus is not on the action or event itself, but on one aspect of the action such as time, place, manner, purpose or target of the action or event.

是 is usually placed right after the subject and can be omitted in an affirmative or interrogative sentence, while 的 is put at the end of the sentence and cannot be omitted.

Subject	shì 是	Time/ Place/ Manner	Predicate	de 的
Nǐ 你	shì 是	zěnme 怎么	rènshi tā 认识她	de 的?
How do	you kr	now her?		
wŏ 我	shì 是	zài Běijīng 在北京	rènshi tā 认识她	de 的。
I met he	r in Be	ijing.		

Subject	shì 是	Time/ Place/ Manner	Predicate	de 的	
Nǐ 你	shì (是)	什么 时候	qù Měiguó 去美国	de 的?	
When did you go to America?					
Wǒ 我	shì (是)	shàng gè yuè 上 个月	qù 去	de 的。	
I went la	ast mor	nth.			

In addition, if the main verb is followed by an object, 的 can be put either before or after the object. For example,

wǒ shì zuótiān qù de xuéxiào 我是昨天去的学校。

wǒ shì zuótiān qù xuéxiào de 我是昨天去学校的。

I went to the college yesterday.

## Unit 7

## Noun phrases with 的

的 is used after a noun, pronoun, verb or adjective to form a noun phrase. It is used to refer to someone or something that is already known in the context. Therefore the head noun is usually left out. 的 can also be used to indicate a certain type of people or things.

F	Referring to a known object/person
adjective de +的	Gōngyuán li de huā kōi le yǒu hóng de 公园 里的花开了,有红的,yǒu huáng de 有黄的。 The flowers in the park have bloomed. There are red and yellow ones.
pronoun	zhè bù shǒujī bù shì wǒ de shì tō de
de	这部手机不是我的,是他的。
+的	This mobile phone isn't mine, it's his.
noun	tōmen de yifu dōu shi hēisè de
de	他们的衣服都是黑色的。
+ 的	Their clothes are all black.
verb	tō shuō de bù duì
de	他说的不对。
+ 的	What he said is not correct.

Indicatin	Indicating a certain category				
adjective	wǒ xǐhuan chī tián de				
de	我喜欢吃甜的。				
+ 的	I like eating sweet things.				
noun	Xīn tóngxué shì gè nán de				
de	新同学是个男的。				
+的	The new classmate is male.				

#### Giving instructions using imperatives

Imperatives are commonly used to give instructions, orders or make requests. As the instruction or request is usually directed to the hearer, the subject is understood by both parties, and therefore often dropped. Other than that, an imperative is similar to an ordinary statement. The adverb 请 is often used at the beginning of an imperative to make it sound polite, and the particle 吧 is often added at the end of an imperative to soften the tone.

Adverbial	Verb	Object				
zài guō li 在锅里	jiā 加	yī wǎn jī tāng 一碗鸡汤。				
Add a bowl of chi	Add a bowl of chicken broth to the pot.					
qǐng gěi wǒ 请给我	ná 拿	yī bēi shuǐ 一杯水。				
Please bring me a	glass of w	/ater.				
	Chī 吃	fàn ba 饭吧!				
Eat up!						

## 把 sentences

The 把 construction includes the agent, the object acted on, the act itself and the result of the action. The object is usually a definite noun, known to both the speaker and hearer. The result of the action can be an adjective or noun expressing the changed state of the object, or a place or person that is involved in the action.

Subject	bǎ 把	Object	Verb	Complement	
	Bǎ 把	ròu 肉	chǎo 炒	shú 熟。	
Stir-fry t	Stir-fry the meat until cooked.				
	Bǎ 把	cōng 葱	qiē 切	chéng mò 成末。	
Finely ch	op th	e spring onion	s.		
wŏ 我	bǎ 把	Zhōngwén shū 中文 书	fàng 放	zài jiā li le 在家里了。	
Heft the Chinese book at home.					

### Unit 8

#### **Duplication of verbs**

Duplication of verbs is used to soften the tone of a sentence. By duplicating a verb, the speaker wants to sound either less decisive, or more polite. Duplication of verbs is often used when making suggestions or requests. — can be placed between the duplicated verbs to express a mild tone.

Subject	Verb	Object	Other	
wŏ 我	kànkan 看看	nǐ de shū 你的书,	kěyǐ ma 可以吗?	
Is it OK f	or me to h	ave a look at your bo	ok?	
Nǐ 你	chīchi 吃吃	wǒ zuò de jiǎozi 我做的饺子。		
Have a t	aste of the	dumplings I made.		
Wŏmen 我们	dǎda 打打	wǎngqiú 网球,	zěnmeyàng 怎么样?	
We'll pla	y a bit of to	ennis, OK?		
Nǐ 你	shì yī shì 试一试			
Try on th	nese trouse	ers.		

#### yuè yuè "The more..." 越·····越·····

越······越······ is used to link a verb or adjective with a verb phrase or adjective phrase, meaning the degree increases as something goes on or increases.

Subject	yuè	Verb /	yuè	Verb phrase /	
	越	Adjective	越	Adjective phrase	
wŏ	yuè	chī	yuè	xiǎng chī	
我	越	吃	越	想吃。	
The mo	re I eat	the more	want	to eat.	
tā	yuè	shuō	yuè	bù gāoxìng	
他	越	说	越	不高兴。	
The mo	re he t	alks the less	happ	y he is.	
Xiǎo Ming	yuè	gāoxing	yuè	bù xiǎng zǒu	
小明	越	高兴	越	不想走。	
The happier Xiao Ming was, the less he wanted to leave.					
Wèntí	yuè	shǎo	yuè	hǎo	
问题	越	少	越	好。	
The fewer problems the better.					

#### Notional passive

Notional passive is used when the focus is on how the object is dealt with and the result of the action, without the need to mention the doer or agent of the action. In a notional passive sentence, the object being acted upon is used as the subject, followed by a verb and its complement. There is no 被 in a notional passive sentence. A notional passive sentence sounds more active than a passive voice sentence with 被, as the focus is on the result or changed state of the object acted upon. For example,

Biáo tián wán le 表填完了。

The form is filled in.

Zuòyè fàng zài jiā li le 作业放在家里了。

The homework is at home.

Shǒutào zhǎo bù dào le 手套 找 不到了。

The gloves could not be found.

## Unit 9

## Expressing result of an action with 到

到 can be used after many different verbs to form a verb complement indicating the result of an action.

Depending on the meaning of the verbs, the verb complement can be a place or an object following 到. For instance, when used after 回 or 来, the complement with 到 indicates a place.

		Complement				
Verb	dào 到	Place				
huí	dào 到	sùshè 宿舍				
return to th	e dormitory					
lái 来	dào 到	xuéxiào 学校				
come to the	e college					
lái 来	dào 到	Běijīng 北京				
come to Be	ijing					

When used after sensory verbs (看, 听, 想) or action verbs (找, 拿, 买), the complement with 到 indicates an object. 不 is used between the verb and 到 to express a negative result. For example,

	Complement			
Verb	dào 到	Object		
kàn 看	dào 到	hěnduō rén 很多人		
see man	y people			
zhǎo 找	bù dào (不)到	110 1110111101		
(can't) fi	nd my little sis	ter		
ná 拿	bù dào (不)到	bàozhǐ 报纸		
(can't) pi	ick up a newsp	aper		
mǎi 买	dào 到	yī jiàn hễn hǎokàn de xù 一件很好看的T恤		
buy a nic	ce-looking T-sh	nirt		

#### băifenzhi Expressing percentages using 百分之······

占……百分之…… is used to express the percentage of something in a group. 占 means "constitute", "make up" or "account for". An adjective phrase is used before 百分之 to state what the percentage is a proportion of. It can be left out if this is known in context.

For example,

Subject	Verb	Adjective phrase	Percentage
Shuìjiào shíjiān 睡觉 时间	zhàn 占	suǒyǒu shíjiān de (所有 时间的)	bǎlfēnzhī 百分之 sānshí 三十。
The time sper	nt slee	oing is 30% (of the	total time).
Zuò dìtiě 坐地铁 shàngbān de rén 上班 的人	zhàn 占	suŏyǒu shàngbān (所有 上班 rénshù de 人数的)	bǎifēnzhī 百分之 wǔshí 五十。

People who go to work by subway constitute 50% (of

#### chúle yǐwài hái 除了……以外,还……

all the commuters).

除了 is a preposition used before a noun, a verb or an adjective. When it is used in a sentence with 还, 除了 means "as well as". The word placed after 除了 should express something that is of the same nature as what is stated in the main clause with 还. For example,

Chúle qúnzi yǐwài tā hái mǎi le dàyī 除了裙子以外,她还买了大衣。

Besides a skirt, she also bought a coat.

Chúle pǎobù yǐwài tā hái xǐhuan dǎ lánqiú 除了跑步以外,他还喜欢打篮球。

In addition to jogging, he also likes playing basketball.

However, if 除了 is used in a sentence without 还, it means "except" or "apart from". For example,

Chúle tā suǒyǒu rén dōu qù kàn diànyǐng le 除了他,所有人都去看电影了。

Everyone went to see the film except him.

Chúle Xīngqīliù yǐwài wò měitiān dōu kěyǐ lái 除了星期六(以外),我 每天 都 可以 来。

I can come every day except Saturday.

Chúle shuǐzhǔyú wǒ xǐhuan suǒyǒu de cài 除了水煮鱼,我喜欢所有的菜。

I like all the dishes except the spicy fish.

### Unit 10

#### Serial verb constructions

In serial verb constructions, the predicate of a sentence can contain more than one verb phrase expressing consecutive actions. These verb phrases are related in manner or purpose, and their order cannot be changed. Usually the first verb phrase regards manner, while the last verb phrase concerns purpose. For example,

	Predicate						
Subject	Verb phrase 1	Verb phrase 2					
Zhōngguórén 中国人		qìngzhù xīnnián de dàolái 庆祝 新年 的到来。					
Chinese p	eople stick up Spri	ng Festival couplets to					
celebrate t	the arrival of the Ne	w Year.					
wŏ 我	zuò huǒchē 坐 火车(manner)						
I took the	train to Beijing.						
Wŏmen 我们	qù Wáng Yù jiā 去王玉家	pàinián 拜年。(purpose)					
We went t	We went to Wang Yu's home to pay a New Year visit.						
Women 我们	qù Sìchuān fànguǎn 去四川饭馆	chīfàn 吃饭。(purpose)					
We went t	o a Sichuan restaur	ant to eat.					

#### Affirmative-negative questions

Affirmative-negative questions are used to ask whether something is positive or negative. The question word consists of a verb or an adjective and their negative form with 不 or 没, for example, 好不好/ 看没看. 不 is used to ask about a simple fact, while 没 is used to ask about whether something has happened or not, except when using 有没有 to ask about possession.

Affirmative-negative questions can be used after the subject as the predicate or part of the predicate, or at the end of a statement as a follow-up question. The answer to an affirmative-negative question is either positive or negative. There is no need to provide any new information to answer such questions.

Subject	Predicate				
Subject	Adjective / Verb	Object			
tā 他	shì bù shì 是不是	Yáo Míng 姚明?			
Is he Yao Ming?					
Nǐ 你	qù bù qù 去不去	Chéngdū 成都?			
Are you going t	to Chengdu?				
Zhè tiáo qúnzi 这条裙子	hǎokàn bù hǎokàn 好看不好看?				
Does this skirt I	ook nice?				
Nǐ 你	kàn méi kàn 看没看	diànshì 电视?			
Did you watch t	television?				
Wáng Yù 王玉	lái méi lái 来没来?				
Did Wang Yu co	me?				

Statement	Tag question
Zuò dìtiě qù 坐地铁去,	hǎo bù hǎo 好不好?
Going by subway, is that C	DK?
Xiàwǔ sān diǎn zhōng 下午三点 钟,	kě bù kěyǐ 可不可以?
Three o'clock in the afterno	oon, is that possible?
Zhè tiáo qúnzi hěn hǎokàn 这条裙子很好看,	shì bù shì 是不是?
This skirt is really pretty, is:	n't it?

## Expressing immediate actions with (就) 要······了

(就) 要……了 is used to express that an action or event is about to happen in the near future. 就 is used before 要 to emphasize the immediacy in time. Adverbs expressing time are often used before (就)要 to indicate how soon the action or event is to take place. 就 is often left out in spoken Chinese and less formal situations.

Subject	Adverb	Predicate			
wŏ 我		yào 要	hui guó le 回国了。		
I'm going h	ome (to m	y country) so			
Tā Lith		jiù yào	xià chē le 下车了。		

Subject	Adverb	Predicate			
Wŏmen 我们	mǎshàng 马上	jiù yào (就)要	dào Chéngdū le 到 成都 了。		
We're abo	ut to arrive i	n Chengdu ri	ght now.		
Shǔjià 暑假	hěn kuài 很快	jiù yào (就)要	dào le		
The summ	ner holidays	will begin ver	ry soon.		

## Unit 11

#### de The auxiliary word 地

地 is often used after an adjective to form an adverbial phrase, placed before a verb to describe the manner of an action. It is part of the adverbial phrase, and cannot be placed after the verb. For example,

Subject	Modal verb	Adverb	ial phrase	Verb	
Tā 她		hěn kuài 很快	de 地	líkāi le 离开了。	
She left	very qui	ckly.			
Wŏmen 我们	yīnggāi 应该	jiànkāng 健康	de 地	shēnghuó 生活。	
We shou	ld live h	ealthily.			
Nǐ 你	yào 要	rènzhēn 认真	de 地	fùxí 复习。	
You need	d to revis	e diligent	lv.		

#### duō shǎo 多 and 少

多 and 少 are two adjectives, meaning "many, much, a lot of, more" and "little, few, less" respectively. They are often used before a verb, indicating a greater or smaller quantity. For example,

Nǐ yīnggāi duō kàn shǎo shuō 你应该多看,少说。

Keep your mouth shut and your eyes open.

Zǎofàn yào chī hǎo wǔfàn yào chī bǎo wǎnfàn yào chī shǎo 早饭要吃好,午饭要吃饱,晚饭要吃少。

Have a good meal for breakfast, a heavy meal for lunch, and a light meal for supper.

Shǎo chī ròu duō chī shūcài 少吃肉,多吃蔬菜。

Eat less meat and more vegetables.

#### Expressing the duration of action

When expressing the duration of an action, the same verb is used after a verb phrase containing an object, followed by a noun phrase as the complement to express the length of time. 7 is put after the second verb to express something that has already happened. For example,

Subject	Adverbial	Verb phrase	Verb	le 了	Duration
Tā 他	měitiān 每天	kòn shū 看书	kàn 看		bàn gè 半个 xiǎoshí 小时。
He read	ds books fo	r half an ho	ur ever	y day	
tā 她	xiàwǔ 下午	mǎi dōngxi 买东西	mǎi 买	le 了	liǎng gè 两个 xiǎoshí 小时。
She we	nt shoppin	g for two he	ours in	the a	fternoon.
Mǎkè 马克	zhōngwǔ 中午	xǐ yifu 洗衣服	xǐ 洗	le 了	shíwǔ 十五 fēnzhōng 分钟。
Mark sp	ent 15 mir	nutes doing	laund	ry at I	unchtime.
Yǒngmín 永民	zuótlān 昨天	zuò zuòyè 做作业	zuò 做	le 了	sān gè 三个 xiǎoshí 小时。

The noun phrase expressing the length of time can also be placed between the verb and the object to act as the complement to express duration of the action.

Yesterday Yeong-min did homework for three hours.

as the complement to express duration of the action. If the action has already been taken, 7 must be used between the verb and the noun phrase. For example,

Advadaial	Varb	le	Complement	
bject Adverbial verb		了	Noun phrase	Object
měitiān 每天	kàn 看		bàn gè xiǎoshí 半个小时	de (的) shū 书。
	měitiān		Adverbial Verb	Adverbial Verb Noun phrase  měitiān kàn bàn gè xiǎoshí

Subject	Adverbial	Vorb	le le	Complement			
Subject	Adverbial			Noun phrase	Object		
Wáng Yù 王 玉		mǎi 买	le 了	liǎng gè xiǎoshí 两个小时			
	Wang Yu went shopping for two hours in the afternoon.						
tā 他	zhōngwǔ 中午	xǐ 洗	le 了	shíwǔ fēnzhōng 十五 分钟	de (的) yifu 衣服。		
He sper	nt 15 minut	tes doi	ng l	aundry at lunch	ntime.		
tā 他	zuótiān 昨天	zuò 做		sān gè xiǎoshí 三个小时	de (的) zuòyè 作业。		
Yesterd	Yesterday he did homework for three hours.						

## Unit 12

#### Wh-questions

The wh-questions in English are called special questions in Chinese. The position of most question words in Chinese is different from the position of whwords in English. In English wh-words are usually placed at the beginning of questions, whereas in Chinese the question words are usually placed where the answers would be expected to appear.

Question Type								
What	Zhè 这	shì 是	shénme 什么?					
	What is this?							
	Zhè 这	shì 是	zhàoxiàngjī 照相机。					
	This is a ca	mera.						

Question Type									
	Mǎkè 马克		shì 是	shéi 谁?					
	Who i	s Mark?							
	Mǎkè 马克		shì 是	wŏ gēge 我哥哥。					
Who	Mark i	s my elder	brother.						
VVIIO	Shéi 谁		zhīdào 知道	zhè jiàn shì 这件事?					
	Who k	nows abou	it this?						
	Lǎoshī 老师		zhīdào 知道	zhè jiàn shì 这件事。					
	The te	acher knov	vs about t	this.					
	Nǐ 你		shì 是	mělí rén 哪里人?					
	Where are you from?								
	wŏ 我		shì 是	Shànghǎirén 上海人。					
	I am fr	om Shangl	nai.						
Where	wălî 哪里		yǒu 有	mài diànhuàkǎ 卖 电话卡 de 的?					
	Where	is there th	at sells ph	none cards?					
	Duimián 对面		yǒu 有	mài diànhuàkǎ 卖电话卡 de 的。					
	Oppos	site is a plac	ce selling	phone cards.					
	Nǐ 你	shénme 什么 shíhou 时候	zuò 做	yùndòng 运动?					
When	When	do you do	exercise?						
WHEH	wŏ 我	měitiān 每天 xiàwů 下午	zuò 做	yùndòng 运动。					
	I do ex	ercise ever	y afterno	on.					

Question Type									
	tā 她	wèishénme 为什么	yào 要 qǐngjià 请假?						
14/1	Why o	loes she wa	nt to take	leave?					
Why	Tā 她	bing le 病了	yào 要 qǐngjià 请假。						
	She wants to take leave because of illness.								
	Wŏmen 我们	zěnme 怎么	qù 去	gòuwù zhōngxīn 购物 中心?					
How	How	lo we get to	the shop	oping centre?					
now	Wŏmen 我们	zuò dìtiě 坐地铁		gòuwù zhōngxīn 购物 中心。					
	We ge	t to the sho	pping ce	ntre by subway.					

#### yǒuyīdiǎn yīdiǎnr Difference between 有一点 and 一点儿

In Chinese, both 有一点 and 一点儿 mean "a little bit". However, these phrases are used in different contexts. 有一点 can only be used before an adjective, meaning "to a small degree", and often has a negative connotation. For example, 有一点慢, 有一点急, 有一点不舒服.

When 一点儿 is used before a noun, it means the amount is not much. When 一点儿 is used after an adjective, it indicates the need for more of something.

Before a noun	
yīdiǎnr qián 一点儿钱 yīdiǎnr niǔròu 一点儿牛肉 yīdiǎnr shuǐ 一点儿水	a little money
After an adjective	a little water
guì yìdiănr	
贵一点儿 dà yīdiǎnr	a bit more expensive
大一点儿 fāngbiàn yīdiǎnr	a bit bigger
方便 一点儿	slightly more convenient

一点儿 can also be used after an adjective in a comparative structure with 比, meaning slightly higher in degree. For example,

Tā bǐ wǒ shíjì yīdiǎnr 他比我实际一点儿。

He's a little more practical than me.

Xiǎo gǒu bǐ dà gǒu kě ài yīdiǎnr 小狗比大狗可爱一点儿。

Small dogs are a bit cuter than big dogs.

Yǒngmín bǐ Mǎkè gāo yīdiǎnr 永民 比马克高一点儿。

Yeong-min is slightly taller than Mark.

#### de de de The auxiliary words 的 / 地 / 得

Although the auxiliary words 的, 地 and 得 are all pronounced "de" with a neutral tone, they are used to form different components of a sentence.

的 is used with an adjective phrase or verb phrase to modify a noun. 地 is used between an adverb or adjective and a verb describing the manner of an action. 得 is used between an adjective or verb and its complement expressing result or degree. For example,

Yī gè gāodà de nánrén zǒu guòlai 一个高大的男人走过来。

A big guy walked over.

Tā hěn kuải de líkāi le 他很快地离开了。

He left very quickly.

Jiànkāng de shēnghuó hěn zhòngyào 健康 地 生活 很 重要 。

Living healthily is very important.

Tā gāoxing de xiào qǐlai 她 高兴 得笑起来。

She was so happy she laughed.

Tā xiě zì xiě de hěn hǎo 他写字写得很好。

He writes very well.

## **Picture captions**

Unit 1 p15 A stallholder paints a traditional opera mask at the Silk Market, Beijing / p18 Workers picking tea / p19 Temple of Heaven, Beijing / p20 Baita (White Dagoba), Beihai Park, Beijing / pp22-23 The Great Wall of China, Badaling, Beijing

**Unit 2** p25 Snow-covered village in northeast China / p28 The Forbidden City, Beijing / p31 Zhujiajiao, a water village near Shanghai / pp32-33 Ice sculpture at the ice & snow festival, Harbin, Heilongjiang province

Unit 3 p35 Chinese New Year family dinner / p38 Child wearing traditional clothing with New Year lantern, Nanjing / pp42-43 Lion dance for the lantern festival in Pingliang, Gansu province

**Unit 4** p45 Teenager riding a BMX bike in front of the Bell Tower, Xi'an / p48 Rickshaws in a Beijing hutong / p50 Buddhist temple on a plateau in western China / p52 Hu Jiazhi, a 112-year-old artist from Nanjing, makes a paper-cutting

Review 1 p58 Zen Buddhist temple

**Unit 5** p59 Boy eating candied haw, a traditional winter snack / p62 The Drum Tower, Xi'an / p64 Lijiang, Yunnan province / pp66-67 Shaanxi cave dwelling

Unit 6 p69 Qin dynasty bronze chariot, Xi'an / pp70-71 Terracotta Warrior and horse, Xi'an / p72 Kneeling archer figure, Xi'an / p73 Tangsancai camel and musicians figurine / p75 Dragon boat race / pp76-77 Mingsha Dunes near Dunhuang, Gansu province

Unit 7 p79 Shuizhuyu, fish in hot chilli oil, a Sichuan dish / p87 Dimsum, Cantonese food that often goes with tea

**Unit 8** p89 Mosuo girl weaving cloth in her shop, Lijiang, Yunnan province / p92 Jars of green leaf tea with traditional Chinese decoration / p93 Chinese doll in traditional Qing costume / pp94-95 Qing-era bridge, Geese Springs, Guangxi Zhuang autonomous region

Review 2 p102 Victoria Harbour, Hong Kong

Unit 9 p103 Jiuzhaigou Valley, Sichuan / p104 Five-Colour Pond, Jiuzhaigou Valley / p105 Wuyi Mountain scenic area, Fujian province / pp108-109 Jiuzhaigou Valley / pp110-111 Huashan, Shaanxi province

Unit 10 p113 Woman with traditional parasol / p116 Beijing opera masks / p118 Monguor woman in traditional clothing / p119 Twin pagodas, Guilin, Guangxi Zhuang autonomous region / p120 A famous painting of Zhou Fang from the Tang dynasty / p121 Girl in Beijing opera costume

Unit 11 p123 A traditional Chinese pharmacy gives out porridge in winter, Hangzhou, Zhejiang province / p128 Statue of a crane, symbol of longevity, the Forbidden City, Beijing / pp128-129 Buddhist monks practise kung fu, Chengdu / p130 Traditional Chinese pharmacy

Unit 12 p133 Tibetan dancer / p138 Traditional doorway design / p139 Beijing opera performer in Monkey King costume / p140 Statue of Confucius at a temple in Shanghai / p142 Old man in Baoxing County, Henan province

Review 3 p145 Cyclists on bicycle and sanlunche / p146 Lijiang, Yunnan province

Pair work activities p148 Chinese calligraphy equipment / p150 Chinese village / p151 Chinese farmer, Yangshuo county, Guangxi Zhuang autonomous region / p152 Chinese water town / p154 Painted clay figurine / p156 Hakka fortified house, Fujian province / p157 Summer Palace, Beijing / p158 Mogao Grottoes, Dunhuang, Gansu province / p159 South Gate of the ancient city wall, Xi'an

## **English translations**

#### Unit 1

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: After class, let's go and eat together.

There's a Shanghai restaurant near the

east gate that's pretty good.

Amanda: I've been to that restaurant. The food

there is very tasty! But I can't go today.

Steve: Why not?

Amanda: I'm going to go and play tennis.

Yeong-min: Really? I didn't know you could play

tennis. Who are you playing with?

Amanda: With Wang Yu. She plays tennis very

well. Can you play tennis?

Yeong-min: No, I can't. Steve, how about you?

Steve: I can't either. I think I should do more

sport. When I lived in London, I went jogging every day before class, but I

can't do that in China.

Yeong-min: Why can't you do it in China?

Steve: Because in China the time classes start

is too early. Classes start at eight o'clock in the morning every day. I think getting out of bed to go to the classroom so early is difficult. Of course getting up so

early to go jogging is impossible!

Amanda: I think eight o'clock is not that early. I

get up at seven o'clock every day, eat

breakfast, then go to class.

Steve: Yeong-min, shall you and I go and eat?

Yeong-min: Sorry, my Chinese homework isn't finished,

and I need to hand it in to the teacher tomorrow. I also need to do revision to prepare for the test on Wednesday.

Amanda: It doesn't matter. We can eat together

next time.

### Reading and writing

#### 12th January, Wednesday

Today was really busy! I got up at half past seven, and went straight out without eating breakfast. There were lots of people on the street, and I was late. I only arrived at the classroom at five past eight. The teacher had already started the lesson. I felt very embarrassed. During the lesson, the teacher had us read some stories in Chinese. A few of my classmates thought that reading stories is not useful.

They like to read Chinese newspapers. But I thought these stories were very interesting. When I have time, I want to go to the library to borrow some Chinese storybooks.

After class, I went to the park and met my friend Li Ming. The weather today was very good. We took some pretty photographs in the park. I felt very happy.

In the evening at eight o'clock, I had dinner with Wang Yu and Yeong-min. We ate and talked, and everyone was happy. I didn't get back to the dormitory till eleven o'clock at night. I feel very tired. Once I've finished writing my diary I'll go to bed and sleep.

#### Unit 2

## Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: Mark, why are you wearing so many

clothes? The weather is very nice today.

The temperature is 20 degrees.

Mark: The weather here is colder than in

Brisbane. So of course I have to wear a

bit more.

Yeong-min: So what clothes are you going to wear

when we go travelling to Xi'an? I hear the winters in Xi'an are very cold. It is

very windy, and could even snow.

Amanda: I love the snow!

Mark: Snow?! I could put on a few more

jumpers, wear a scarf and gloves, and

bring a coat too.

Yeong-min: How are you going to walk around if

you wear so much? The Xi'an winter temperature is not too different to Seoul. I don't plan on bringing too many clothes.

Amanda: What's the weather in Chengdu like? Is it

as cold as Xi'an?

Yeong-min: Chengdu isn't as cold as Xi'an. Chengdu

is in the south. It's warmer there than

the north.

Amanda: So I can wear my favourite T-shirt and

shorts, and wear sunglasses!

Mark: I can wear surf shorts!

Yeong-min: No, no! Although Chengdu isn't as cold

as Xi'an, the temperature in winter is still below ten degrees. You can't wear T-shirts and shorts. Of course, if you want to look

cool, you can wear sunglasses.

### Reading and writing

#### **Weather Report**

From next week onwards, cold air will affect most regions of the country. Subjected to the effects of the cold air, temperatures in the north will decrease 4–8°C. In many places the difference between daytime and nighttime temperatures will reach 10°C. The temperature difference in some places in the northwest and southwest will be 15°C or more.

#### Xi'an

Description of the second			
Date	Monday 7 February	Tuesday 8 February	Wednesday 9 February
Weather	Cloudy, becoming sunny	Cloudy, becoming overcast	Snow
Temperature	-4°C/1°C	-5°C/2°C	-6°C/1°C
Chengdu		REPORTED IN	
Date	Monday 7 February	Tuesday 8 February	Wednesday 9 February
Weather	Sunny	Cloudy, becoming overcast	Drizzle
Temperature	1°C/7°C	0°C/6°C	-2°C/6°C

#### Unit 3

## Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: Wang Yu, happy New Year!

Wang Yu: Happy New Year! Come i

Happy New Year! Come in, come in. Dad, Mum, my friends are here. Let me introduce you. These are my parents. These are my friends

Amanda, Yeong-min and Steve.

Amanda & others: Uncle, Auntie, happy New Year!

WY's father: Happy New Year! Here are your red

packets.

Amanda & others: Thanks, Uncle and Auntie.

WY's mother: Do sit down. Please have some

sweets, and fruit. Would you like to

drink tea, or fruit juice?

Amanda: I would like fruit juice.

Steve & YM: I'll have tea.

Yeong-min: Your family's place is very big, and

pretty.

Wang Yu: Let me show you around my home.

This is the living room, and beside

it is the dining room.

Steve: How many bedrooms are there in

your home?

Wang Yu: Three. This is my elder brother's

room, and opposite it is the

bathroom.

Amanda: Whose room is this?

Wang Yu: That's me and my elder sister's

room. My mum and dad's room is

opposite.

Yeong-min: What's that fragrant smell?

Wang Yu: My mum is making her speciality,

sweet and sour fish. How about I take you to have a look at the

kitchen?

Amanda & Steve: Great!

### Reading and writing

#### It's New Year! by Steve

This year I spent Spring Festival in Chinal Spring Festival is also Chinese people's New Year, the festival when families get together. Many people put up spring couplets on the doorways of their homes, hang red lanterns, celebrating the coming of the new year.

On the night of New Year's Eve, I went to the college's New Year's Eve party. Many of my classmates did not go home. They were all staying in Beijing over the Spring Festival. We played games and sang songs. Everyone enjoyed themselves.

On the first day of the new year, many people get up very early and go to pay New Year visits at their friends' houses. At noon, Yeong-min, Amanda and I went to Wang Yu's home for a New Year visit. First we made *jiaozi*, then we ate. Wang Yu's mother prepared a lot of dishes. My favourite dish was the sweet and sour fish.

I think China's Spring Festival is both exciting and fun.

### Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Xi'an at last! After more than ten hours

on a train. Oh yeah, how do we get to

the Old City Hotel?

Mark: The Old City Hotel should be near the Bell

Tower. Let's go outside and ask someone. . . . Excuse me, how do we get to the Bell Tower

from here? How far is it?

Passerby: The Bell Tower is in the city centre. It's

quite close by, about five kilometres. If you take a taxi you'll get there in ten

minutes.

Mark: Where is the taxi rank?

Passerby: Go straight ahead for 50 metres, then

turn right and you'll be able to see the

taxi rank.

Amanda: Thank you. Do you know how to get

from the city centre to the ancient city walls and the Terracotta Warriors?

Passerby: The ancient city walls are on the south

side of the city centre, so you can get there on foot. The Terracotta Warriors are very far away, 30 kilometres east of Xi'an. You can go there by taxi or by

bus.

Yeong-min: Does Xi'an have other interesting places?

Passerby: You ought to go to the Big Wild Goose

Pagoda. It is to the south of Xi'an city.

Mark: Does the Big Wild Goose Pagoda look

like a big wild goose? Haha...

Yeong-min: Mark, don't mess about.

Amanda: What about the Great Mosque?

Passerby: You should pay a visit there too. The

Great Mosque is near the Bell Tower. It's

very easy to find!

Amanda: I see. Thank you so much.

Passerby: Don't mention it. I wish you a happy

time in Xi'an. Goodbye.

### Reading and writing

Xi'an Travel Guide

How do I get to the Terracotta Warriors museum?

From the city centre, you can get to the Terracotta

Warriors by taxi, as well as by bus or train.

#### Taxi/Driving a car

Taking a taxi or driving a car is quick and convenient. The taxi fare will be about ¥180. It only takes about 15 minutes from the city centre to the motorway. After 30 minutes on the motorway, you enter Lintong. After coming off the motorway, continue for about another 10 minutes and you will arrive at the Terracotta Warriors museum.

#### Bus

Going by bus is comparatively slow, taking about an hour and a quarter. There are buses to the Terracotta Warriors museum from the Xi'an railway station. Tickets are ¥7 each.

#### Train

Taking the train is not as convenient as going by taxi or bus. After getting the train from Xi'an to Lintong station, you will still need to catch a taxi before reaching the Terracotta Warriors museum. The fare is not too expensive—the train ticket costs ¥6, and the taxi fare is about ¥30. If there are traffic jams on the motorway, the train is quicker. But sometimes the train can be late.

#### Unit 5

### Vocabulary and listening

Receptionist: Hello! Welcome to the Old City Hotel.

Mark: Hello. We'd like to check in.

Receptionist: Do you have a reservation?

Mark: Yes, my name is Mark Johnson.

Receptionist: Could I see your passports, please?

Amanda & YM: Here you are.

Receptionist: You have reserved a standard room

and a single room, for a total of four

days, is that right?

Mark: That's right.

Receptionist: Please fill in the registration card.

Mark: OK. ... Finished, there you go.

Receptionist: Thank you. ... Excuse me, is your

mobile number 16628958963?

Mark: No, my mobile number is 16628958763.

This is a seven, not a nine.

Receptionist: OK. Your room numbers are 826 and

832. These are the room cards.

Amanda: Excuse me, can we use the Internet

in our rooms?

Receptionist: Yes, you can.

[In the room]

Receptionist: Hello? How may I help you?

Amanda: Hello! I'd like to get online, but I can't

find the Internet connection.

Receptionist: The connection point is beneath

your desk.

Amanda: Could you also give me another

quilt? It's very cold here.

Receptionist: Opposite the bathroom in your room

is a wardrobe. At the very top of the wardrobe is a quilt—you can take it

down and use it.

Amanda: Thank you, goodbye.

### Reading and writing

Love travel, love life

Old City Hotel

Star rating: ★★★
Area: Xi'an city centre

Address: 18 West Street, Xi'an City

Recommended Amanda Posted 7 Feb

This hotel is in the city centre. Transportation is very convenient. The rooms here are good. The bed sheets and towels are all very clean. The basic items in the room, such as toothpaste, toothbrushes, soap, combs and so on, are all provided free. The hotel laundry service is quick and good. I put a coat to wash in the afternoon, and by the evening it had already been cleaned. Some people think the rooms are too small, but I think the room size is just right, and very comfortable. Also, there was an Internet connection in my room. I could use my own computer to go online – it's very convenient.

Transportation to and from this hotel is very convenient. The service is also very good, but the rooms are too small. The room I stayed in was 3 metres long and 2.5 metres wide, much smaller than rooms in other hotels. The bed in the room was also not big enough. The single bed is 1.8 metres long and 1.2 metres wide, not big enough for a tall person.

### Unit 6

### Vocabulary and listening

Ticket seller: Hello.

Mark: Hello. Three student tickets, please.

Ticket seller: Could you let me see your student IDs?

Mark: Here.

Ticket seller: Thank you. That's three tickets. It will

be ¥135 in total. Your guide will wait for

you at the entrance.

#### [Inside the museum]

Yeong-min: Excuse me, how were the Terracotta

Warriors discovered?

Guide: A local farmer discovered the Terracotta

Warriors in 1974 while he was digging a well. This Terracotta Warrior is 1.83m tall, about the same height as a real

person.

Amanda: Were Chinese people of that time really

1.83m tall? Most people aren't that tall

now.

Guide: It might be a little bit taller than the

people of the time.

Yeong-min: The Terracotta Warrior looks like our

Chinese teacher—Teacher Ding. Don't

you think so?

Amanda: Yes! He looks really like Teacher Ding

when we haven't handed in our

homework, hahaha.

Guide: Shh... Please be guieter, you can't talk

loudly here.

Mark: We should take a picture for Teacher

Dina

Yeong-min: Hold on, that sign says "no photography".

Mark: Sorry, I didn't see it.

Amanda: I want to go and see how tall that

Terracotta Warrior is.

Mark: Don't go over there, this sign says "no

entry".

Amanda: What? You're not allowed to do

anything here...

### Reading and writing

#### The Shaanxi History Museum

On our third day in Xi'an, we visited the Shaanxi History Museum. There are 370,000 artefacts in the museum. It's a great place to get to know Chinese history.

There are many artefacts from the Han Dynasty (206BC-220CE) in the museum. The largest ethnicity of the Chinese people, the Han, get their name from the Han Dynasty. What the Han people speak is called *Hanyu*, and the script they use is called *Hanzi*. Of course, nowadays most Chinese people can speak *Hanyu* and write *Hanzi*.

This is an item from the Tang Dynasty (618-907CE), called *Tang San Cai*. The Tang Dynasty was one of the most prosperous eras in Chinese history. From that time, people in the South called themselves "Tang people". Those Chinese who went overseas the earliest called themselves "Tang people", therefore the "Chinatown" areas are also called "Tang people's street".

#### Unit 7

### Vocabulary and listening

#### [In a taxi]

Mark: Do you like Sichuan food?

Yeong-min: I like it. Sichuan food numbs your

tongue and it's hot. It's very tasty.

Amanda: You're Korean, of course you like spicy

food. I like Cantonese food. It's not salty or spicy. It has a comparatively light

flavour.

Mark: Shanghai food is also very tasty. It's

sweet and delicious.

Amanda: Don't you only love eating McDonald's

and KFC?

Mark: Although I do love fast food, we're in

Sichuan, so we ought to eat Sichuan

food.

Yeong-min: We're nearly at the restaurant. Stop the

car on the left, please.

#### [In the restaurant]

Waitress: How many people?

Yeong-min: Three.

Waitress: This way, please. May I ask what you

would like to drink?

Mark: Please bring me a bottle of beer.

Amanda: I would like a glass of apple juice.

Yeong-min: I'll have a glass of water.

Waitress: Here's the menu.

Yeong-min: What are your specialities?

Waitress: Mapo tofu, Kung Pao chicken, and fish

boiled in hot chili oil.

Yeong-min: We'll have those three dishes, then.

Waitress: Would you like any other dishes?

Amanda: Stir-fried egg, please—not spicy. Also,

we'd like three bowls of plain rice. And please also bring us three pairs of chopsticks and three spoons.

Waitress: All right. Please wait a moment, your

food will be ready soon.

### Reading and writing

## Learning How to Make Chinese Food—"Mapo Tofu" [Ingredients]

300g tofu, 100g minced beef (minced pork or chicken are also OK)

a small amount of oil, two spoonfuls of spicy soybean paste, a small amount of Sichuan pepper powder, small amounts of spring onion, ginger and garlic, half a bowl of chicken broth

#### [Time]

10-15 minutes

### [Cooking steps]

- 1 Cut the tofu into small pieces. Cut the spring onion, ginger and garlic into tiny pieces.
- 2 Put the oil into the pan, heat up. First add the ginger, then the meat. Stir-fry the meat until it is welldone, then put it into a bowl.
- 3 Put oil into the pan and heat it. First put in the spring onion, ginger, garlic and spicy soybean paste and stir-fry it until it gives off a fragrance. Then add the tofu and meat and stir-fry for two minutes. Add the chicken broth, and boil for five minutes. Finally, add the Sichuan pepper powder.

#### Unit 8

#### Vocabulary and listening

Stallholder: Hello! Come in and have a look.

Mark: Miss, how much is this panda?

Stallholder: Very cheap, seventy yuan.

Mark: That's too much. How about a bit cheaper?

Stallholder: OK, a little bit cheaper. How about fifty

yuan?

Amanda: We're students, we don't have much

money. Make it a bit cheaper still. Is

thirty yuan OK?

Stallholder: You really can bargain. I'll sell it to you

for thirty yuan.

Mark: Thanks. Yeong-min, do you think Wang

Yu will like this panda?

Yeong-min: She'll definitely like it! But how are you

going to bring it home? We already have

too much luggage.

Amanda: There's the post too. There's a post office

near the hotel. I still want to send my

family some postcards.

Stallholder: Is this your first time in Chengdu? You

speak Mandarin very well!

Mark: Your Mandarin is very good too! What

souvenir do you think our Korean friend

should buy?

Stallholder: How about this traditional Chinese

jacket? The colour is very attractive, and

it is very Chinese.

Yeong-min: Can I try it on?

Stallholder: No problem. This Tang jacket is pure silk.

It's very comfortable to wear.

Amanda: Oh, very chic! Mark, Yeong-min, I'd like

to take a look over that way. Let's meet

back at the hotel in a while.

M&YM: OK, see you later!

#### [At the post office]

Mark: Excuse me, I'd like to send this parcel to

Beijing.

Worker: You need to fill in this form. Can you read

(understand) it?

Mark: No problem. ... I've filled it in, here it is.

Worker: First let's check the weight. ... 1.2 kilograms,

for ordinary postage that's seven yuan and three jiao. For air mail it's twelve

yuan eight jiao.

Mark: How long will ordinary mail take? How

long is it for air mail?

Worker: Ordinary postage takes about two

weeks, air mail will get there in five days.

Mark: I'll send it by air mail. Here's the money.

Worker: Thirteen yuan. Here's your change, two jiao.

Mark: Thank you, goodbye.

#### Reading and writing

Wang Yu:

Hello!

Mark, Yeong-min and I have already arrived in Chengdu. Chengdu has lots of interesting landmarks. We're all having a great time. Yesterday evening we went to eat at a restaurant near the city centre. The name of the restaurant was "Old Chengdu". We had heard that the Sichuan cuisine there is very authentic. We ordered mapo tofu, Kung Pao chicken, and fish boiled in hot chili oil. When we started eating I thought the flavour was very nice, but the more I ate the hotter it seemed. In the end I had to drink a big glass of water, and then I felt a bit better. But Mark and Yeong-min aren't at all afraid of spicy food. They ate up all the dishes very quickly.

This afternoon, we went shopping at a market. There are lots of things there, and they're very cheap. Yeong-min bought a Tang jacket. He looks very handsome in traditional Chinese clothes. I saw this tea set and this scarf, they're very pretty. I would like to buy one of them as a gift for your mum. Can you tell me if your mum would prefer the tea set or the scarf?

Best wishes!

Amanda

#### Unit 9

### Vocabulary and listening

Mark: The weather's really nice today.

Yeong-min: The scenery here is amazing!

Amanda: Yes. This lake is especially pretty.

Yeong-min: Look, the water was blue just now, and

now it's changed to green.

Mark: The guide book said this lake is called

"Five-Colour Pond", so there ought to be five colours. I can only see two now, green and blue. The bookshop should

give me a refund!

Amanda: Haha, very funny. The water over there in

the lake has a lot of colours, do you see?

Mark: I see them! Blue sky, white clouds,

the multi-coloured water and green

mountains, so beautiful.

Amanda: It's like a picture.

Mark: I really like this kind of natural scenery.

The mountains here are particularly pretty, completely different from the

mountains in Australia.

Yeong-min: They're not like the mountains in Korea

either. They're very distinctive. I've never

seen scenery like this before.

Amanda: I like it here too. The air is good, and it's

peaceful. Do you hear that? The birds

are singing.

Mark: Haha, yes. You can't hear that in the city.

Yeong-min: Look, here are the photos that I have

taken. What do you think?

Amanda: Great. Take a photo of us, please.

Yeong-min: No problem. One, two, three—smile!

### Reading and writing

Sichuan Travel Guide

#### **Wolong Reserves**

The Wolong Reserves are situated to the north-west of Chengdu, approximately 130km from Chengdu. In the reserves are more than 100 giant pandas, 10% of the total number in the whole country, and so it's also known as "panda country".

Aside from giant pandas, the reserves also have many other animals and plants that are protected by the state.

Transport: tourist bus (Chengdu—Wolong) 3 hours

#### Jiuzhaigou

Jiuzhaigou is over 400km from Chengdu. The snow-capped mountains, waterfalls, lakes and forests here are extremely beautiful. It is called "paradise on earth".

There are over 100 lakes, large and small, in Jiuzhaigou. Among them is Five-Colour Pond, it is so clear that you can see the bottom of the water. With the blue sky, white clouds and trees reflected in the water, it is colourful and entrancing. Jiuzhaigou also has many waterfalls. The biggest of these waterfalls is 200m wide and over 40m high.

Transport: aeroplane (Chengdu—Jiuhuang airport) 45 minutes

tourist bus (Chengdu—Jiuzhaigou) 10 hours

### Unit 10

### Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: I'm back! What are you two doing?

Yeong-min: We're watching TV. What souvenirs did

you buy?

Amanda: I bought some silk scarves and postcards

for my family. Oh, and I met two new

friends.

Mark: Really?

Amanda: I'm going to go and meet them at a café

in a while. Are you coming?

Yeong-min: I don't really feel like going. I'm very

comfortable sitting here watching TV.

Amanda: My new friends are both girls.

Yeong-min: Is this café nearby?

Amanda: Ah, now you're interested! The café is

behind the hotel, very close by. It takes about five minutes to walk there.

Mark: What are your new friends like?

Amanda: One is called Lisa, she's a German

overseas student. She has long blonde hair, blue eyes and medium height. She's very slim. The other is called Sun Yuxiang, she's from Shanghai. Her hair is shorter, and she's not really tall or short.

She's a bit more plump than Lisa.

Mark: Sounds interesting, but you have not

mentioned the most important thing.

Amanda: What's the most important thing?

Yeong-min: Mark most wants to know if they

are pretty, and whether they have

boyfriends!

Amanda: I'm going to go. If you want to know, just

come with me.

#### Reading and writing

#### Amanda:

I'm glad to know you have arrived in Chengdu and that you're having a great time. I'd like to see what Yeong-min looks like in traditional Chinese clothes. Very handsome, I'm sure. The two things you've chosen are both very pretty. I think my mum may like the tea set more.

Also, thanks for helping me out by taking the football shirt for my cousin. Tomorrow evening he'll go to the hotel you're staying in to collect the shirt. My cousin is called Wang Ming. He's 17 years old, very tall, fairly skinny, with short hair, and he wears glasses. His mobile number is 16521659870. If you have any questions, you can call me.

Wishing you a pleasant trip!

Wang Yu

#### Xiao Ming:

Long time no see! Are you doing well lately? Your birthday is coming. I got a friend to bring back a football shirt for you from Britain. It's your favourite team's. The shirt has two colours, blue and white, and I thought you should wear a medium size. I hope you like it.

My friend Amanda has gone on holiday to Chengdu, so I got her to bring the shirt for you. Amanda is Brazilian. She isn't very tall. She has an average build, black skin, and long hair. She's staying at Chengdu Hotel. You can go and find her at the hotel tomorrow evening. Her phone number is 16912764805.

Happy birthday!

Wang Yu

#### Unit 11

## Vocabulary and listening

**Doctor:** Please sit down! What is your name?

Mark: My name is Mark.

Doctor: Whereabouts do you feel unwell?

Mark: I have a bit of a headache, a fever, and I

have diarrhoea.

**Doctor:** How long has this been going on?

Mark: Two days.

Doctor: Have you been away recently?

Mark: Yes. I went travelling to Chengdu with

two friends and only just got back.

Doctor: First let's do some examination. Open

wide, let me see your throat.

Mark: Aaaaaaaah.

**Doctor:** Now I'll have a listen to your lungs.

Mark: Doctor, what disease have I caught?

**Doctor:** It's not anything serious, just an ordinary

cold. You're feeling ill because you haven't had enough rest, and you've

caught a cold.

Mark: So how should it be treated? Do I need

an injection?

Doctor: There's no need for an injection. I'll give

you a prescription. Get a good rest, don't eat anything too spicy, and you'll

be back to normal in no time.

Mark: Thank you, Doctor.

#### [At the dispensary]

Nurse: Mark, here's your medicine. This is

medicine for your cold and to bring down the fever. Take it three times a day, two tablets each time. You can take it either before or after meals. Please note, after taking the medicine you may feel

drowsy.

Mark: Thank you. Goodbye.

#### Reading and writing

#### Tips for a Healthy Life

A healthy body is very important for everyone. Do you know how to live healthily? These lifestyle tips may help you!

Is what you eat healthy?

You should eat more vegetables and fruit, and less of foods that have lots of oil or salt.

Do you have breakfast, lunch and dinner at fixed times and with fixed amounts?

You should have your meals at fixed times. Eat well at breakfast, eat till you're full at lunch, and eat less at dinner.

Do you drink enough water every day?

You should drink plenty of water, at least eight glasses per day.

Do you exercise often?

You should do plenty of exercise. Half an hour every day is best. Don't spend all day watching television and playing online games at home.

Do you get enough sleep every day?

Sleep early and rise early. You should sleep at least eight hours a day. Don't go to bed very late.

### Vocabulary and listening

Who else is coming today, Wang Yu?

Wang Yu: There's still a good friend of mine to

come. You can get to know her a bit. I

think you'll really like her.

Mark: Great! What's her name?

Wang Yu: Her name's Kate. She's a Canadian. She

just started working in Beijing last week.

Amanda: How do you know each other?

Wang Yu: When Kate came to Beijing last year to

learn Chinese. I was her teacher.

Mark: What's she like?

Wang Yu: She has a medium figure, big blue eyes,

curly blonde hair, and she's the same

Amanda: She's a beautiful girl! We should

> introduce her to Steve and Yeong-min. By the way, what's her personality like?

Wang Yu: She's a lot like you—very optimistic,

very self-confident. Although she's a little quick-tempered, she cares a lot for her friends. Kate likes making friends, and she likes singing and dancing. She can sing pop songs and folk songs. In particular, she sings the Chinese folk song "The Half-Moon

Rises" very well.

Mark: Let me guess, is she an Aries?

Wang Yu: How do you know?

Mark: I'm interested in star signs. Her personality

is a lot like an Aries.

You can ask her when she gets here. I Wang Yu:

hope you guessed right.

Amanda: Steve is a Leo. I heard that Leo and Aries

go well together.

Wang Yu: Then we'll definitely have to introduce

> Kate and Steve to each other. Oh, do you know about the Chinese zodiac? Many people believe that the Chinese zodiac is also connected to people's

characteristics.

Kate: Sorry I'm late!

#### Reading and writing

#### Who am I?

- 1 My favourite colour is
- a red or yellow.
- b brown or grey.
- c blue or green.
- 2 When I go shopping, I will
- a go straight to buy what I want.
- b ask friends' opinions.
- c go to lots of different shops, comparing items and prices.
- 3 When I'm on summer vacation, I will
- a do part-time work to earn money.
- go travelling, mountain climbing or diving with my friends.
- c stay at home, reading books or listening to music.
- 4 When I'm ill, I will
- go to see the doctor right away.
- b phone my mum and ask her what to do.
- c go online to find information, and try new medicine.
- 5 The pet I would most like to have is
- a a cat.
- b a dog.
- c several fish.

#### 10-16

You are practical and careful. You always think before you act.

18-22

You like making friends. You care a lot about your friends, but you're not very independent.

24-30

You are very independent, self-confident and optimistic. You like an exciting life.

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
车	chē	n.	carriage of a	4	大方	dàfang	adj.	generous	12
车费	chēfèi	n.	(bus/train/taxi) fare	4	大年初一	dànián chūyī		first day of lunar New Year	3
称	chēng	v.	call; weigh	8	大约	dàyuē	adv.	approximately	4
成	chéng	v.	become, turn/ change into	7	带	dài	v.	bring, take	2
诚实	chéngshí	adj.	honest	12	戴	dài	v.	wear (clothing accessories like hat, scarf, etc.)	2
橙子	chéngzi	n.	orange	3	单人	dānrén	n.	single (person)	5
池	chí	n.	pond, pool	9	当地	dāngdì	n.	local	6
迟到	chídào	V.	be late	1	当时	dāngshí	n.	at that time	6
宠物	chŏngwù	n.	pet	12		Total Maria		on the date	
出	chū	v.	go/come out	5	当日	dàngrì	n.	stated	4
除了	chúle	prep.	except for,	9	岛	dăo	n.	island	9
以外	yĭwài		besides		导游	dăoyóu	n.	tour guide	6
除夕	chúxī	n.	New Year's Eve	3	到达	dàodá	V.	arrive	4
穿	chuān	V.	wear (clothes)	2	倒映	dàoyìng	v.	reflect, mirror	9
床	chuáng	measure word/n.		1	得病	débìng	v.	acquire/get disease	11
床单	chuángdān	n.	bed sheet	5	德国	Déguó	n.	Germany	10
春节	Chūnjié	n.	Spring Festival, Chinese New	3	得名	déming	v.	get one's name	6
春联	chūnlián	n.	Year spring couplets	3	地	de	particle	(used to indicate an adverbial phrase)	11
春天	chūntiān	n.	spring	2			44	(to indicate	
次	cì	n.	service number of a train	4	得	de	auxiliary word	result, degree or condition)	1
刺激	cijī	V.	exciting	12	登记	dēngjì	v.	register	5
葱	cōng	n.	spring onion	7	灯笼	dēnglong	n.	lantern	3
聪明	congming	adj.	clever	12	等	děng	v.	wait (for)	6
错	cuò	adj.	wrong	9	底	dĭ	n.	bottom	9
达到	dádào	v.	reach, get up to	2	地道	dìdao	adj.	typical, authentic	8
打工	dăgōng	v.	work, labour	12	地区	dìqū	n.	area	2
打井	dă jĭng	V.	dig a well	6	点	diǎn	v.	order	8
打喷嚏	dă pēntì	V.	sneeze	11	电脑	diànnăo	n.	computer	5
打针	dăzhēn	v.	have/give an injection	11	电视	diànshì	n.	TV	10
大	dà	adj.	big, large	2	定量	dìngliàng	v.	with fixed quantity	11

D

	WORD		PART OF	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	STEENING .	dìngshí	SPEECH V.	at a fixed time	11	感冒	gănmào	n./v.	cold	11
	<b>è</b> 时 冬天	döngtiān	n.	winter	2	刚才	gāngcái	n.	just now, a moment ago	9
	董	dŏng	v.	understand	8	高速	gāosù		motorway,	4
	豆瓣酱	dòubànjiàng	n.	spicy soybean paste	7	公路	gōnglù	n.	freeway	
	读	dú	v.	read	1	告示牌	gàoshìpái	n.	sign, noticeboard	6
	独立	dúlì	adj.	independent	12	告诉	gàosu	v.	tell	8
	堵车	dǔchē	v.	traffic jam	4	歌曲	gēqǔ	n.	song	12
	度	dù	n.	degree	2	个子	gèzi	n.	height, stature	5
	肚子痛	dùzi tòng	V.	stomach ache	11	更	gèng	adv.	more, even more	10
	短	duǎn	adj.	short (length)	10	公斤	gōngjīn	measu word	re kilogram	8
	短裤	duănkù	n.	shorts	2	公里	gōnglĭ	n.	kilometre	4
	对了	duì le		by the way, that's right	10	狗	gǒu	n.	dog	12
	对面	duìmiàn	n.	opposite	3	每	gòu	v.	adequate, enough	5
	多云	duōyún	n.	cloudy	2	古	gŭ	adj.	old, ancient	4
E	而且	érqiě	conj.	and, but also	10	故事	gùshi	n.	story	1
	耳朵	ěrduo	n.	ear	10	固执	gůzhí	adj.	stubborn	12
F	发烧	fāshāo	v.	fever; have a fever	11	挂	guà	V.	hang up	3
	发现	fāxiàn	v.	discover	6	拐	gu <b>ăi</b>	V.	turn	4
	饭厅	fàntīng	n.	dining room	3	关系	guānxi	n.	relationship, connection	12
	放	fàng	v.	put, place	7	关心	quānxīn	v.	care about; care	e 12
	放学	fàngxué	v.	school is over	1	光	quāng	adj.	used up, all gor	ne 8
	非常	fēicháng	adv.	very, extremely	9	光临	guānglín		come, be prese	nt 5
	肥皂	féizào	n.	soap	5	锅	guō	n.	wok, pan	7
	肺	fèi	n.	lung	11	果汁	guŏzhī	n.	fruit juice	3
	风	fēng	n.	wind	2	田还	hái	adv.	still, yet; also	1
	风景	fēngjĭng	n.	scenery	9	海浪	hǎilàng	n.	wave	9
	风衣	fēngyī	n.	windcheater	2	海滩	hăitān	n.	beach	9
	服务	员 fúwùyuár	n <i>n</i> .	attendant, waiter, waitres	5	海外	hăiwài	n.	overseas	(
	服用	fúyòng	v.	take (medicin		韩国	Hánguó	n.	Republic of Ko	rea
	复习	fùxí	v.	revise, review	1	汉语	Hànyǔ	n.	Chinese language	
C	干净	gānjìng	adj	clean	5	汉族		n.	Han ethnicity	
	感觉	gănjué	V./I	n. feel; feelings	8	人沃				
		1000 1000							Vacabulary list	. 10

	WORD		PART OF SPEECH	MEANING L	JNIT		WORD		PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	空邮	kōngyóu	v.	air mail	8		麦当劳	Màidāngláo	n.	McDonald's	7
	哭	kū	V.	cry	1	,	慢	màn	adj.	slow	4
	块	kuài	n.	piece	7	X	忙	máng	adj.	busy	1
	快	kuài	adj.	fast	4		猫	māo	n.	cat	12
	快乐	kuàilè	adj.	happy	10		毛	máo	measure word	Chinese currency unit; jiao (coll.)	8
	筷子	kuàizi	n.	chopsticks	7		毛笔	máobĭ	n.	writing brush	8
	宽	kuān	adj./n.	wide; width	5		毛巾	máojīn	n.	towel	5
L	拉肚子	lādùzi	v.	suffer from diarrhoea	11		毛衣	máoyī	n.	sweater, jumper	2
	辣	là	adj.	spicy, hot	7		帽子	màozi	n.	hat	2
	老	lăo	adj.	old	8		没错	mélcuò		right	9
	乐观	lèguān	adj.	optimistic	12		没关系	méiguānxi		it doesn't matter	1
	累	lèi	adj.	tired	1		眉毛	méimao	n.	eyebrow	10
	冷	lěng	adj.	cold	2		美	měi	adj.	beautiful	9
	梨	II.	n.	pear	3		美极了	měi jí le		amazing	9
	离开	líkāi	v.	leave	4		米饭	mĭfàn	n.	rice	7
	里	Iĭ	n.	in, inside	5		免费	miănfèi	adj.	free of charge	5
	俩	liă	num.	two (coll.)	10		苗条	miáotiao	adj.	slim, slender	10
	脸	liăn	n.	face	10		民歌	míngē	n.	folk song	12
	凉爽	liángshuăng	adj.	cool	2		民族	mínzú	n.	ethnic group	6
	了解	liăojiě	V.	get to know,	6		明信片	míngxìnpiàn	n.	postcard	8
	-10			understand			墨镜	mòjìng	n.	sunglasses	2
	零下	língxià	n.	below zero	2	N	拿	ná	V.	take	5
	领带	lĭngdài	n.	tie	8		拿手菜	náshŏucài	n.	signature dish	3
	另	ling	pron.	other, another	10		耐心	nàixīn	adj.	patient	12
	另外	lìngwài	conj.	in addition, besides	5		难	nán	adj.	difficult	1
	流鼻涕	liú bíti	V.	runny nose	11		能	néng	moda v.	can	1
	流行	liúxing	adj.	popular	12		鸟	niǎo	n.	bird	9
	留学生	liúxuéshēng	g n.	overseas studen	t 10					you (respectful	4
	旅游	lŭyóu	V.	tour; tourism	9		您	nín	pron.	form)	
M	麻	má	adj.	numb, numbing	7		牛奶	niúnăi	n.	milk	7
	麻烦	máfan	v.	bother, trouble	7		牛肉末		n.	minced beef	7
	马上	măshàng	adv.	immediately, at once	12		牛仔裤	niúzăikù	n.	jeans	2
	卖	mài	v.	sell	8		农民	nóngmín	n.	farmer; rural people	6

	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	_	
	=	
	=	
	$\in$	
	=	
	E	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	_	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	-	
	_	
	=	
	_	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	-	
	=	
	_	
	=	
	=	
	=	
	_	
	E	
-		

	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	女孩	nŭhái	n.	girl	10		切	qiē	v.	cut	7
	暖和	nuănhuo	adj.	warm	2		清澈	qīngchè	adj.	clear	9
0	呕吐	ŏutù	V.	vomit	11		清淡	qīngdàn	adj.	lightly flavoured	7
P	怕	pà	v.	be afraid, fear	8		晴	qing	adj.	sunny	2
	旁边	pángbiān	n.	next to, beside	3		庆祝	qìngzhù	v.	celebrate	3
	胖	pàng	adj.	plump, fat	10		秋天	qiūtiān	n.	autumn	2
	配	pèi	v.	match	12		球鞋	qiúxié	n.	sports shoes	10
	皮带	pídài	n.	belt	8		球衣	qiúyī	n.	jersey, kit for ball	10
	皮肤	pífū	n.	skin	10		去年	qùnián		games	
	脾气	píqi	n.	temper,	12	R	<b>让</b>		n.	last year	12
	皮鞋	píxié	n.	disposition leather shoes		Ш		ràng	V.	let, allow	1
			measure		8		热	rè	adj.	hot	2
	片	piàn	word	tablet	11		热闹	rènao	adj.	bustling and exciting	3
	票	piào	n.	ticket	4		人间	rénjiān	n.	(human) world, the earth	9
	瓶	píng	n.	bottle	7		认真	rènzhēn	adj.	careful; serious	12
	苹果	píngguŏ	n.	apple	7		日记	riji	n.	diary	1
	平邮	píngyóu	v.	ordinary postage, surface	8		日用品	rìyòngpĭn	n.	daily necessities	5
		,		mail			容易	róngyì	adj.	easy	4
	葡萄	pútao	n.	grape	3		如果	rúguŏ	conj.	if	2
	普通	pǔtōng	adj.	ordinary, common	11		入口处	rùkǒu chù	n.	entrance	6
	普通话	Pǔtōnghuà	n.	Mandarin	8		入内	rùnèi	V.	enter	6
				Chinese			入住	rùzhù	v.	check in	5
	瀑布	pùbù	n.	waterfall	9	S	嗓子疼	săngzi téng		sore throat	11
Q	其中	qízhōng	n.	among	8	٦	森林	sēnlín	n.	forest	9
	起	qĭ	V.	since, starting from	2		沙发	shāfā	n.	sofa	5
	起床	qĭchuáng	v.	get up	1		山	shān	n.	mountain, hill	9
	汽水	qìshuĭ	n.	soft drink	7		山水	shānshuĭ	n.	scenery	9
	气温	qìwēn	n.	air temperature	2		商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop	12
	前	qián	n.	before	1		伤心	shāngxīn	adj.	sad	1
	钱包	qiánbão	n.	wallet	8					above, on top of;	
	前台	qiántái	n.	front desk/	5		上	shàng	n./v.	begin to do	2
	墙	qiáng	n.	reception wall	4		上/下车	shàng xià chẽ	V.	get on/off (a vehicle)	4
	强盛	qiángshèng	adj.	powerful, prosperous	6		上床	shàngchuáng	v.	get in bed, go to bed	1
734											

	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	退钱	tuìqián	v.	refund	9		下雪	xiàxuě	v.	snow	2
	退烧	tuìshāo	v.	bring down a fever	11		先	xiān	adv.	first	3
W	袜子	wàzi	n.	socks	10		仙境	xiānjìng	n.	paradise	9
	外面	wàimiàn	n.	outside	4		咸	xián	adj.	salty	7
	完	wán	v.	complete	1		当	xiāng	n.	hometown, countryside	9
	玩	wán	V.	play	3		香	xiāng	adj.	fragrant (smell	3
	玩具	wánjù	n.	toy	8		香蕉	xiāngjiāo		or taste)	
	完全	wánquán	adv./ adj.	completely;	9		相信	xiāngxìn	n. v.	banana believe	3
	晚	wăn	adv.	late	11		向	xiàng	prep.	to	4
	碗	wăn	n.	bowl	7		像	xiàng	v.	look like	4
	晚点	wăndiăn	adj.	delayed	4		小	xiǎo	adj.	small	2
	万	wàn	num.	ten thousand	6		小心	xiǎoxīn	adj.	careful	
	喂	wéi	interj.	hello, hey	5		笑	xiào	-		12
	围巾	wéijīn	n.	scarf	2				v.	smile, laugh constellation,	
		-		(for a person,			星座	xīngzuò	n.	star sign	12
	位	wèi	word	respectful)	7		行	xíng	V.	OK, right	2
	味道	wèidào	n.	taste, feel	8		行动	xíngdòng	v./n.	act; action	12
	为什么	wèishénme	adv.	why	1		行李	xíngli	n.	luggage	8
	卫生间	wèishēngjiān	n.	washroom, toilet	3		性格	xìnggé	n.	character	12
	位于	wèiyú	v.	be located in	9		兴趣	xìngqù	n.	interest	10
	文物	wénwù	n.	cultural relic, artefact	6		羞怯	xiūqiè	adj.	shy	12
	文字	wénzì	n.	writing, script	6		休息	xiūxi	v.	rest	11
	问题	wèntí	n.	question,	10		嘘	хū	interj.	shh	6
				problem			悬崖	xuányá	n.	cliff	9
EV2	卧室	wòshì	n.	bedroom	3	Y	牙膏	yágão	n.	toothpaste	5
X	西瓜	xīguā	n.	watermelon	3		牙刷	yáshuā	n.	toothbrush	5
	吸烟	xīyān	V.	smoke tobacco	6		盐	yán	n.	salt	11
	洗	xĭ	v.	wash	5		研究	yánjiū	V.	research, study	12
	洗衣	xĭyī	V.	wash clothes	5		眼睛	yănjing	n.	eye	10
	下次	xiàcì	n.	next time	1		养	yăng	V.	raise, feed	12
	下降	xiàjiàng	v.	decrease	2		样子	yàngzi	n.	appearance, look	8
	下面	xiàmian	n.	under, beneath	5		药	yào	n.	medicine	11
	夏天	xiàtiān	n.	summer	2		夜间	yèjiān	n.	nighttime	2

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
一边	yībiān	adv.	while, at the same time	1		羽绒服	yŭróngfú	n.	down jacket	2
一定	yīding	adv.	definitely, for sure	8		雨鞋	yŭxie	n.	rain boots	2
一共	yīgòng	adv.	altogether, in total	5		预报	yůsăn yùbào	n. n./v.	umbrella forecast	2
衣柜	yīguì	n.	wardrobe	5		预订	yùdìng	v.	reserve	5
一会儿	yīhuìr	n.	a little while	8		元	yuán	n.	yuan, Chinese currency unit	4
一样	yīyàng	adj.	same	2		原料	yuánliào	n.	ingredients	7
已经	yĭjīng	adv.	already	1		越	yuè	adv.	more	8
以上	yĭshàng	n.	above	2		月亮	yuèliana	n.	moon	12
椅子	yĭzi	n.	chair	5	Z	再	zài	adv.	then; again	2
意见	yìjiàn	n.	advice	12		再见	zàijiàn	V.	goodbye	4
阴	yīn	adj.	overcast	2		咱们	zánmen	pron.	we, us	4
因为	yīnwèi	conj.	because	1		早	zăo	adj.	early	1
饮酒	yĭnjiŭ	V.	drink alcohol	6		占	zhàn	v.	occupy, make up	
引起睡意	yıngı shuiyi	V.	cause drowsiness	11		张	zhāng	measure word/v.		4
饮食	yĭnshi	n./v.	food and drink;	6		长	zhăng	v.	grow, develop	10
影响	yĭngxiǎng	v./n.	eat and drink	2		着凉	zháoliáng	v.	catch a cold	11
硬座	yingzuò		influence; affect hard seat	2		找	zhǎo	v.	look for, find	4
勇敢	yŏnggăn	n. adj.	brave	4		照相	zhàoxiàng	V.	take a photo	9
用	yòng	n./v.		12		这么	zhème	pron.	so, such	1
油	yóu	n.	oil	7		着	zhe	auxiliary word	(used to indicate continuation of	6
邮寄	yóujì	V.	post, send by post	8		真丝	zhēnsī	n.	action or state) real silk, 100% silk	8
游戏	yóuxì	n.	game	3		整天	zhěngtiān	n.	whole day, all	11
有趣	yŏuqù	adj.	interesting	1					day	11
有时(候)	yŏushí (hou)	adv.	sometimes	4		证	zhèng	n.	certificate	6
有效	yŏuxiào	V.	valid	4		正好	zhènghǎo	adj.	just right	5
又	yòu	adv.	again; also	3		挣钱	zhèngqián	V.	make money	12
右	yòu	n.	right side, right	4		正在	zhèngzài	adv.	in the process of	3
于	yú	prep.	at, in	6		之一	zhīyī	n.	one of	6
愉快	yúkuài	adj.	happy, pleasant	10		直接	zhíjiē	adj.	direct	12
雨	yŭ	n.	rain	2		植物	zhíwù	n.	plant	9
						治	zhì	V.	treat (disease)	11

	1
4	
	_
	=
1	
	=
	_
	_
	- 75
	E
	<b>3</b>
- 1	
	-
10	=
	_
	$\sim$
	E
	-
- 3	=
7	
	-
	$\in$
19	
	$\in$
	Service .
	-
	- 6
	-
1 3	E
1	
100	=
	1
- 4	E
	-

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
中等	zhōngděng	adj.	medium	10
中号	zhōnghào		medium size	10
终于	zhōngyú	adv.	be at last, finally	4
种	zhŏng	measure word	kind, type	9
重量	zhòngliàng	n.	weight	8
重要	zhòngyào	adj.	important	10
猪肉	zhūròu	n.	pork	7
煮	zhǔ	v.	boil	7
祝	zhù	v.	wish	4
祝好!	Zhù hǎo		Best wishes.	8
注意	zhùyì	v.	note, pay attention to	11
转	zhuăn	v.	change	2
准备	zhǔnbèi	v.	prepare (for)	1
桌子	zhuōzi	n.	desk, table	5
资料	zīliào	n.	information, data	12

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
自己	zìjĭ	pron.	oneself	5
自然	zìrán	n.	nature	9
自信	zìxìn	adj.	self-confident	12
总机	zŏngjī	n.	operator	5
总是	zŏngshì	adv.	always	12
总数	zŏngshù	n.	total number	9
走路	zŏulù	V.	walk	4
啃	zuĭ	n.	mouth	11
最后	zuìhòu	n.	finally	7
最近	zuijin	n.	recently	10
昨天	zuótiān	n.	yesterday	8
左	zuŏ	n.	left side, left	7
做法	zuòfă	n.	method, cooking steps	7
作业	zuòyè	n.	homework	1

